

In determining the burden, if any, of a State or political subdivision standard or requirement on interstate commerce the Commission shall consider and make appropriate (as determined by the Commission in its discretion) findings on the technological and economic feasibility of complying with such standard or requirement, the cost of complying with such standard or requirement, the geographic distribution of the household substance to which the standard or requirement would apply, the probability of other States or political subdivisions applying for an exemption under this subsection for a similar standard or requirement, and the need for a national, uniform standard or requirement under this Act for such household substance.

(2) A regulation under paragraph (1) granting an exemption for a standard or requirement of a State or political subdivision of a State may be promulgated by the Commission only after it has provided, in accordance with section 553(b) of title 5 notice with respect to the promulgation of the regulation and has provided opportunity for the oral presentation of views respecting its promulgation.

(Pub. L. 91-601, § 7, formerly § 8, Dec. 30, 1970, 84 Stat. 1673; Pub. L. 92-573, § 30(a), Oct. 27, 1972, 86 Stat. 1231; Pub. L. 94-284, § 17(c), May 11, 1976, 90 Stat. 513; renumbered § 7, Pub. L. 97-35, title XII, § 1205(c), Aug. 13, 1981, 95 Stat. 716.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For classification to the Code of "this Act", referred to in text, see References in Text note set out under section 1471 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-284 substituted "(a) Except as provided in subsections (b) and (c) of this section, whenever" for "Whenever" in existing provision, and added subsecs. (b) and (c).

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

"Commission" substituted for "Secretary" in subsec. (a) pursuant to section 30(a) of Pub. L. 92-573, which is classified to section 2079(a) of this title and which transferred functions of Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare under this chapter to Consumer Product Safety Commission.

### CHAPTER 40—DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Sec.	
1501.	Establishment of Department; Secretary; seal.
1502, 1503.	Omitted.
1503a.	Under Secretary of Commerce for Economic Affairs.
1503b.	Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere; duties; appointment; compensation.
1504.	Repealed.
1505.	Additional Assistant Secretary; duties, rank of Assistant Secretaries.
1506.	Additional Assistant Secretary; appointment; applicability of section 1505.
1507.	Additional Assistant Secretary; appointment; compensation; duties.
1507a.	Repealed.
1507b.	Assistant Secretary of Commerce; appointment; compensation; duties.
1507c.	Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere; duties; appointment; compensation.
1508.	General Counsel.

Sec. 1509.	Designation of officer to sign routine papers.
1510.	Clerical assistants.
1511.	Bureaus in Department.
1511a.	Repealed.
1511b.	United States fishery trade officers. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appointment.</li> <li>Assignment.</li> <li>Functions of fishery trade officers.</li> <li>Administration.</li> </ol>
1511c.	Estuarine Programs Office. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishment.</li> <li>Functions.</li> <li>Authorization.</li> </ol>
1511d.	Chesapeake Bay Estuarine Resources Office. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Establishment.</li> <li>Functions.</li> <li>Budget line item.</li> <li>Omitted.</li> <li>Chesapeake Executive Council.</li> </ol>
1512.	Powers and duties of Department.
1513.	Duties and powers vested in Department.
1514.	Basic authority for performance of certain functions and activities of Department.
1515.	Records, etc., of bureaus transferred to Department of Commerce.
1516.	Statistical information.
1516a.	Statistics relating to social, health, and economic conditions of Americans of Spanish origin or descent.
1517.	Transfer of statistical or scientific work.
1518.	Custody of buildings; officers transferred.
1519.	Annual and special reports.
1519a, 1520.	Repealed.
1521.	Working capital fund; establishment; amount; uses; reimbursement.
1522.	Acceptance of gifts and bequests for purposes of the Department; separate fund; disbursements.
1523.	Tax status of gifts and bequests of property.
1524.	Investment and reinvestments of moneys; credit and disbursement of interest.
1525.	Special studies; special compilations, lists, bulletins, or reports; clearinghouse for technical information; transcripts or copies; cost payments for special work; joint projects; cost apportionment, waiver.
1526.	Receipts for work or services; deposit in special accounts; availability for payment of costs, repayment or advances to appropriations or funds, refunds, credits to working capital funds; appropriation limitation of annual expenditures from accounts.
1527.	Fees or charges for services or publications under existing law unaffected.
1527a.	Economics and Statistics Administration Revolving Fund.
1528.	Transferred.
1529.	Relinquishment of legislative jurisdiction over certain lands.
1530.	Awarding of contracts for performance of commercial activity by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.
1531.	Buying Power Maintenance accounts for International Trade Administration, Export Administration, and United States Travel and Tourism Administration.
1532.	Telecommunications; electromagnetic radiation; research, analysis, dissemination of information; other functions of Secretary.
1533.	Commerce, Science, and Technology Fellowship Program.
1534.	Assessment of fees for access to environmental data. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Basis of assessment.</li> <li>Eligible recipients; waiver of fees in cases of foreign governments and international organizations.</li> <li>Publication of fee schedules in Federal Register; initial schedule effective for three-year period.</li> </ol>

- Sec.
- (d) Effective date of assessments; progressive increments.
  - (e) Data archive center operations; availability of fees for expenses of centers.
  - (f) Report to Congressional committees.
  - (g) Other assessment authorities unaffected.
1535. Office of Space Commerce; report of activities.
1536. Prohibition against fraudulent use of "Made in America" labels.
1537. Needs assessment for data management, archival, and distribution.
1538. Notice of reprogramming.
  - (a) In general.
  - (b) Notice of reorganization.
1539. Financial assistance.
  - (a) Processing of applications.
  - (b) Notification of applicant.
  - (c) Exemption.
  - (d) "Nondiscretionary assistance program" defined.
1540. Cooperative agreements.

#### § 1501. Establishment of Department; Secretary; seal

There shall be at the seat of government an executive department to be known as the Department of Commerce, and a Secretary of Commerce, who shall be the head thereof, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and whose term and tenure of office shall be like that of the heads of the other executive departments; and the provisions of title 4 of the Revised Statutes, including all amendments thereto, shall be applicable to said department. The said Secretary shall cause a seal of office to be made for the said department of such device as the President shall approve, and judicial notice shall be taken of the said seal.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §1, 32 Stat. 825; Feb. 17, 1909, ch. 137, §§1, 2, 35 Stat. 626; Mar. 4, 1909, ch. 297, §1, 35 Stat. 861; Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, §1, 37 Stat. 736; Mar. 3, 1917, ch. 163, §1, 39 Stat. 1111; Mar. 4, 1925, ch. 549, §4, 43 Stat. 1301.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Title 4 of the Revised Statutes, referred to in text, was entitled "Provisions Applicable to All Executive Departments", and consisted of R.S. §§158 to 198. For provisions of the Code derived from such title 4, see sections 101, 301, 303, 304, 503, 2952, 3101, 3106, 3341, 3345 to 3349, 5535, 5536 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees; section 207 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure; sections 514, 520 of Title 28, Judiciary and Judicial Procedure; section 3321 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 591 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

A Department of Labor, under charge of a Commissioner of Labor, was established by act June 13, 1888, ch. 380, 25 Stat. 182, and by section 9 of that act, the Bureau of Labor created under act June 27, 1884, ch. 127, 23 Stat. 60, was to cease on the organization of the Department. The Department of Commerce and Labor, as an Executive Department, with a Secretary of Com-

merce and Labor as the head thereof, was established by act Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, 32 Stat. 825, and by section 4 of that act, the Department of Labor was placed under the jurisdiction and made a part of the Department of Commerce and Labor with various other offices, bureaus, and branches of the public service also transferred to and placed under the jurisdiction of the Department so established. In subsequent appropriation and other acts, the Department of Labor was designated as the Bureau of Labor in that Department. But by act March 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, a new executive department was created, to be called "The Department of Labor," with a Secretary of Labor to be the head thereof, and the Department of Commerce and Labor was thereafter to be called the Department of Commerce, and the Secretary thereof to be called the Secretary of Commerce.

Functions of all other officers of Department of Commerce and functions of all agencies and employees of such Department, with a few exceptions, transferred to Secretary of Commerce, with power vested in him to authorize their performance or the performance of any of his functions by any such officers, agencies, and employees by Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out below.

#### DEPUTY SECRETARY OF COMMERCE

For provisions directing the President to appoint a Deputy Secretary of Commerce, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, with the Deputy Secretary to receive compensation at the rate payable for Level II of the Executive Schedule and with the Deputy Secretary to perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Secretary may from time to time prescribe, see section 2(b)(1) of 1979 Reorg. Plan No. 3, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Creation of the Office of Deputy Secretary of Commerce by section 2(b)(1) of 1979 Reorg. Plan. No. 3 effective Dec. 7, 1979, see Ex. Ord. 12175, set out as a note under section 2171 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

#### ORDER OF SUCCESSION

For order of succession in case of absence, disability or vacancy in office of both the Secretary and Deputy Secretary, see Ex. Ord. No. 11880, Oct. 2, 1975, 40 F.R. 46089, as amended, set out as a note under section 3347 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 5 OF 1950

Eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, as amended July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title III, §304, 68 Stat. 430

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, March 13, 1950, pursuant to the provisions of the Reorganization Act of 1949, approved June 20, 1949 [see 5 U.S.C. 901 et seq.].

#### DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

##### SECTION 1. TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS TO THE SECRETARY

(a) Except as otherwise provided in subsection (b) of this section, there are hereby transferred to the Secretary of Commerce all functions of all other officers of the Department of Commerce and all functions of all agencies and employees of such Department.

(b) This section shall not apply to the functions vested by the Administrative Procedure Act (60 Stat. 237) [see 5 U.S.C. 551 et seq. and 701 et seq.] in hearing examiners employed by the Department of Commerce, nor to the functions of the Civil Aeronautics Board, of the Inland Waterways Corporation, or of the Advisory Board of the Inland Waterways Corporation.

##### SEC. 2. PERFORMANCE OF FUNCTIONS OF SECRETARY

The Secretary of Commerce may from time to time make such provisions as he shall deem appropriate authorizing the performance by any other officer, or by

any agency or employee, of the Department of Commerce of any function of the Secretary, including any function transferred to the Secretary by the provisions of this reorganization plan.

#### SEC. 3. ADMINISTRATIVE ASSISTANT SECRETARY

[Repealed. July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title III, § 304, 68 Stat. 430. Section authorized an Administrative Assistant Secretary of Commerce.]

#### SEC. 4. INCIDENTAL TRANSFERS

The Secretary of Commerce may from time to time effect such transfers within the Department of Commerce of any of the records, property, personnel, and unexpended balances (available or to be made available) of appropriations, allocations, and other funds of such Department as he may deem necessary in order to carry out the provisions of this reorganization plan.

#### MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 5 of 1950, prepared in accordance with the Reorganization Act of 1949 and providing for reorganizations in the Department of Commerce. My reasons for transmitting this plan are stated in an accompanying general message.

After investigation I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in Reorganization Plan No. 5 of 1950 is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 2(a) of the Reorganization Act of 1949.

I have found and hereby declare that it is necessary to include in the accompanying reorganization plan, by reason of reorganizations made thereby, provisions for the appointment and compensation of an Administrative Assistant Secretary of Commerce. The rate of compensation fixed for this officer is that which I have found to prevail in respect to comparable officers in the executive branch of the Government.

The taking effect of the reorganizations included in this plan may not in itself result in substantial immediate savings. However, many benefits in improved operations are probable during the next years which will result in a reduction in expenditures as compared with those that would be otherwise necessary. An itemization of these reductions in advance of actual experience under this plan is not practicable.

HARRY S. TRUMAN.

THE WHITE HOUSE, March 13, 1950.

#### FEDERAL MARITIME BOARD, AND MARITIME FUNCTIONS OF SECRETARY OF COMMERCE

Section 307 of Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1273, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, provided that the functions transferred by the provisions of that Plan should not be subject to the provisions of Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, set out above. Said Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950 created, within the Department of Commerce, the Federal Maritime Board, and the Maritime Administration, the latter, with a Maritime Administrator at its head. It abolished the United States Maritime Commission, transferring some of its functions and some of the functions of its Chairman to said Federal Maritime Board. It transferred the remainder of the functions of that Commission and its Chairman to the Secretary of Commerce, with power vested in him to authorize their performance by said Maritime Administrator.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Secretary of Commerce, see section 5312 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### §§ 1502, 1503. Omitted

#### CODIFICATION

Section 1502, act June 5, 1939, ch. 180, § 1, 53 Stat. 808, established position of Under Secretary of Commerce.

Position abolished by section 2(b)(2) of Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1979, 44 F.R. 69273, 93 Stat. 1381, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section 1503, act June 5, 1939, ch. 180, § 2, 53 Stat. 808, provided for performance by Under Secretary of Commerce of Secretary's duties on latter's death, absence, etc.

#### UNDER SECRETARY FOR INTERNATIONAL TRADE

The additional office of Under Secretary for International Trade, in the Department of Commerce, was provided for by section 2(c) of Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1979, 44 F.R. 69273, 93 Stat. 1381, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, to be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to receive compensation at the rate payable for Level III of the Executive Schedule, and to perform such duties and exercise such powers as the Secretary of Commerce may from time to time prescribe.

#### UNDER SECRETARY FOR TRANSPORTATION

The additional office of "Under Secretary of Commerce for Transportation", in the Department of Commerce, was provided for by section 301 of Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1273, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, to be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Under Secretaries of Executive departments, and to perform such duties as the Secretary of Commerce shall prescribe.

#### § 1503a. Under Secretary of Commerce for Economic Affairs

There shall be in the Department of Commerce an Under Secretary of Commerce for Economic Affairs who shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Under Secretary shall perform such duties as the Secretary of Commerce shall prescribe.

(Pub. L. 97-195, § 1(a), June 16, 1982, 96 Stat. 115.)

#### § 1503b. Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere; duties; appointment; compensation

There shall be in the Department of Commerce an Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere who shall serve as the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration established by Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970 [5 U.S.C. App.] and perform such duties as the Secretary of Commerce shall prescribe. The Under Secretary shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and shall be compensated at the rate now or hereafter provided for Level III of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5314).

(Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, § 407(a), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3739.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970, referred to in text, is set out under section 1511 of this title.

#### SERVICE BY INCUMBENT ADMINISTRATOR AND DEPUTY ADMINISTRATOR OF THE NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION

Section 407(c) of Pub. L. 99-659 provided that: "The individual serving on the date of enactment of this Act [Nov. 14, 1986]—

“(A) as the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration shall also serve as the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere until such time as a successor is appointed under subsection (a) of this section [enacting this section]; and

“(B) as the Deputy Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration shall also serve as the Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere until such time as a successor is appointed under subsection (b) of this section [enacting section 1507(c) of this title].”

**§ 1504. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-195, §1(c)(1), June 16, 1982, 96 Stat. 115**

Section, acts Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §2, 32 Stat. 826; Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, §1, 37 Stat. 736; Mar. 3, 1917, ch. 163, §1, 39 Stat. 1111, provided for appointment by President of an Assistant Secretary of Commerce, who would perform such duties as prescribed by Secretary or required by law.

**§ 1505. Additional Assistant Secretary; duties, rank of Assistant Secretaries**

There shall be in the Department of Commerce one additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Secretary of Commerce may assign to his Assistant Secretaries such duties, including the direction of the Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce, as he shall prescribe, or may be required by law. The Assistant Secretaries of Commerce shall be without numerical distinction of rank.

(July 15, 1947, ch. 251, 61 Stat. 326.)

CODIFICATION

Provisions of last sentence that fixed the compensation of the Assistant Secretaries of Commerce have been omitted as the positions are under the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section was formerly classified to section 592a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5 by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

PRIOR PROVISIONS

Prior provisions for an additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce were contained in act May 20, 1926, ch. 344, §8 (1st sentence), 44 Stat. 573, as amended June 23, 1938, ch. 601, §1107(k), 52 Stat. 1029. Said position was terminated by section 592a-1 of former Title 5, Executive Departments and Government Officers and Employees. Section 8 of act May 20, 1926, was subsequently repealed by Pub. L. 85-726, title XIV, §1401(a), Aug. 23, 1958, 72 Stat. 806, and Pub. L. 97-195, §1(c)(2), June 16, 1982, 96 Stat. 115.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Pursuant to powers transferred to Secretary of Commerce under Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title, Secretary has reassigned functions of Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce to other officers of Department.

ORDER OF SUCCESSION

For order of succession in case of absence, disability, or vacancy in office of both Secretary and Deputy Secretary of Commerce, see Ex. Ord. No. 11880, Oct. 2, 1975, 40 F.R. 46089, as amended, set out as a note under section 3347 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Assistant Secretaries, see section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Appointment of additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce, and applicability of this section, see section 1506 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1506 of this title.

**§ 1506. Additional Assistant Secretary; appointment; applicability of section 1505**

There shall be on and after July 2, 1954 in the Department of Commerce, in addition to the Assistant Secretaries now provided for by law, one additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce, who shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and who shall be subject in all respects to the provisions of section 1505 of this title, relating to Assistant Secretaries of Commerce.

(July 2, 1954, ch. 456, title III, §304, 68 Stat. 430.)

CODIFICATION

Section constitutes the first sentence of section 304 of act July 2, 1954. The second sentence of such section 304 repealed section 3 of Reorg. Plan 5 of 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title, which established the position of Administrative Assistant Secretary of Commerce.

Section was formerly classified to section 592a-3 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Assistant Secretaries, see section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 1507. Additional Assistant Secretary; appointment; compensation; duties**

There shall be in the Department of Commerce, in addition to the Assistant Secretaries now provided by law, one additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce who shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Assistant Secretaries of Commerce, and shall perform such duties as the Secretary of Commerce shall prescribe.

(Pub. L. 87-405, Feb. 16, 1962, 76 Stat. 9.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 592a-4 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

CROSS REFERENCES

Compensation of Assistant Secretaries, see section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 1507a. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-31, §12(5), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 154**

Section, Pub. L. 91-469, §42(a), Oct. 21, 1970, 84 Stat. 1038, related to appointment, compensation, and duties of the Assistant Secretary for Maritime Affairs.

**§ 1507b. Assistant Secretary of Commerce; appointment; compensation; duties**

There shall be in the Department of Commerce, in addition to the Assistant Secretaries provided by law as of November 12, 1977, one additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate. Such Assistant Secretary shall perform such duties as the Secretary of Commerce shall prescribe.

(Pub. L. 95-173, §9(a), Nov. 12, 1977, 91 Stat. 1360; Pub. L. 97-195, §1(c)(4), June 16, 1982, 96 Stat. 115.)

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-195 substituted “Such Assistant Secretary shall perform such duties” for “Such Assistant Secretary shall receive compensation at the rate prescribed by law for Assistant Secretaries of Commerce, and shall perform such duties”.

**§ 1507c. Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere; duties; appointment; compensation**

There shall be in the Department of Commerce, in addition to the Assistant Secretaries of Commerce provided by law before November 14, 1986, one additional Assistant Secretary of Commerce who shall have the title Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere and shall serve as the Deputy Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration established by Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970 [5 U.S.C. App.] and perform such duties and functions as the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere shall prescribe. The Assistant Secretary for Oceans and Atmosphere shall be appointed by the President by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and shall be compensated at the rate now or hereafter provided for Level IV of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5315).

(Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, §407(b), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3739.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970, referred to in text, is set out under section 1511 of this title.

## SERVICE BY INCUMBENT ADMINISTRATOR AND DEPUTY ADMINISTRATOR OF THE NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION

Individuals serving on Nov. 14, 1986, as Deputy Administrator of National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration to also serve as Assistant Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, until successor is appointed, see section 407(c)(B) of Pub. L. 99-659, set out as a note under section 1503b of this title.

**§ 1508. General Counsel**

There shall be in the Department of Commerce a General Counsel, who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate.

(Mar. 18, 1904, ch. 716, §1, 33 Stat. 135; July 17, 1952, ch. 932, §2, 66 Stat. 758; Aug. 20, 1954, ch. 776, 68 Stat. 753.)

## CODIFICATION

Provisions of section that fixed the compensation of the General Counsel have been omitted as the position

is under the Executive Schedule under section 5315 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Section was formerly classified to section 592b of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5 by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## AMENDMENTS

1954—Act Aug. 20, 1954, established rate of compensation.

1952—Act July 17, 1952, redesignated Solicitor as General Counsel and provided that “all laws and orders relating or referring to the Solicitor shall be deemed to relate or refer to the General Counsel”.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of other officers, employees, and agencies of Department of Commerce, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of Commerce, with power to delegate, see Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title.

## ORDER OF SUCCESSION

For order of succession in case of absence, disability, or vacancy in office of both Secretary and Deputy Secretary of Commerce, see Ex. Ord. No. 11880, Oct. 2, 1975, 40 F.R. 46089, as amended, set out as a note under section 3347 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 1509. Designation of officer to sign routine papers**

The Secretary may designate an officer of the Department to sign minor routine official papers and documents during the temporary absence of the Secretary, the Under Secretary, and the Assistant Secretaries of the Department.

(May 21, 1945, ch. 129, title III, §301, 59 Stat. 188; July 15, 1947, ch. 251, 61 Stat. 326.)

## CODIFICATION

Assistant Secretary changed to Assistant Secretaries by act July 15, 1947, which provided for an additional Assistant Secretary. See section 1505 of this title.

Section was formerly classified to section 593a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of other officers, employees, and agencies of Department of Commerce, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of Commerce, with power to delegate, see Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title.

**§ 1510. Clerical assistants**

There shall also be such clerical assistants as may from time to time be authorized by the Congress.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §2, 32 Stat. 826; July 16, 1952, ch. 878, §2, 66 Stat. 710.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 594 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## AMENDMENTS

1952—Act July 16, 1952, provided for clerical assistants instead of a disbursing clerk.

## DISBURSEMENT CLERK

Section, act Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §2, 32 Stat. 826, provided for a disbursing clerk in the Department of Commerce.

## TRANSFER OF DISBURSEMENT AGENCIES

Division of Disbursement and certain other offices and agencies and their functions consolidated into Fiscal Service of Department of the Treasury by Reorg. Plan No. III of 1940, §1(a)(1), eff. June 30, 1940, 5 F.R. 2107, 54 Stat. 1231, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See section 306 of Title 31, Money and Finance.

## § 1511. Bureaus in Department

The following named bureaus, administrations, services, offices, and programs of the public service, and all that pertains thereto, shall be under the jurisdiction and subject to the control of the Secretary of Commerce:

(a) National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration;

(b) United States Travel and Tourism Administration;

(c) National Institute of Standards and Technology;

(d) Patent and Trademark Office;

(e) Bureau of the Census;

(f) United States Fire Administration; and

(g) such other bureaus or other organizational units as the Secretary of Commerce may from time to time establish in accordance with law.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §§4, 12, 32 Stat. 826, 830; June 17, 1910, ch. 301, §4, 36 Stat. 537; Aug. 23, 1912, ch. 350, §1, 37 Stat. 407; Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, §3, 37 Stat. 737; Jan. 5, 1923, ch. 23, §1, 42 Stat. 1109; June 30, 1932, ch. 314, §501, 47 Stat. 415; Feb. 22, 1934, Ex. Ord. 6611; May 27, 1936, ch. 463, §1, 49 Stat. 1380; 1939 Reorg. Plan No. II, §§2(a), 4(e), 6, eff. July 1, 1936, 4 F.R. 2731, 53 Stat. 1432; 1940 Reorg. Plan No. IV, §§7, 8, eff. June 30, 1940, 5 F.R. 2422, 54 Stat. 1235, 1236; 1946 Reorg. Plan No. 3, §§101–104, eff. July 16, 1946, 11 F.R. 7875, 60 Stat. 1097; June 30, 1949, ch. 288, title I, §103(a), 63 Stat. 380; Aug. 4, 1949, ch. 393, §20, 63 Stat. 561; 1949 Reorg. Plan No. 7, §1, eff. Aug. 19, 1949, 14 F.R. 5228, 63 Stat. 1070; 1950 Reorg. Plan No. 21, §§101, 106, 201, 15 F.R. 3178, 64 Stat. 1273; Oct. 29, 1974, Pub. L. 93–498, §23, 88 Stat. 1549; Jan. 2, 1975, Pub. L. 93–596, §3, 88 Stat. 1949; Oct. 5, 1978, Pub. L. 95–422, §2(c), 92 Stat. 932; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97–31, §12(6), 95 Stat. 154; Oct. 16, 1981, Pub. L. 97–63, §4(a)(1), 95 Stat. 1014; Aug. 23, 1988, Pub. L. 100–418, title V, §5115(c), 102 Stat. 1433.)

## CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 597 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89–554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

## AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100–418 substituted “National Institute of Standards and Technology” for “National Bureau of Standards”.

1981—Pars. (c) to (g). Pub. L. 97–31 struck out par. (c) “Maritime Administration” and redesignated pars. (d) to (h) as (c) to (g), respectively.

1978—Par. (g). Pub. L. 95–422 substituted “United States Fire Administration” for “National Fire Prevention and Control Administration”.

1974—Pub. L. 93–498 amended section generally, substituting reference to Secretary of Commerce for Department of Commerce, substituting letters for numbers in the designation for enumerated bodies, and in such enumeration substituted reference to National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, United States Travel Service, Maritime Administration, Na-

tional Bureau of Standards, Patent Office, Bureau of the Census, National Fire Prevention and Control Administration and such other bureaus or other organizational units as the Secretary of Commerce may from time to time establish in accordance with law, for reference to The Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce, The Bureau of Public Roads, The Civil Aeronautics Authority, The Census Office, The Coast and Geodetic Survey, The Federal Maritime Board, The Inland Waterways Corporation, The Maritime Administration, The National Bureau of Standards, The Patent Office, and The Weather Bureau.

## CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Travel and Tourism Administration” substituted for “United States Travel Service” in par. (b), pursuant to section 4(a)(1) of Pub. L. 97–63, which established United States Travel and Tourism Administration in place of United States Travel Service, effective Oct. 1, 1981. See section 2124 of Title 22, Foreign Relations and Intercourse.

“Patent and Trademark Office” substituted for “Patent Office”, in par. (d) pursuant to section 3 of Pub. L. 93–596, set out as a note under section 1 of Title 35, Patents.

In order to implement the provisions of Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970, eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090, as amended, set out below, the following organizational names appearing in chapter IX of subtitle B of Title 15, Code of Federal Regulations, which covers the administration of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, were changed by order of the Acting Associate Administrator, 35 F.R. 19249, Dec. 19, 1970, as follows: Environmental Science Services Administration to National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (ESSA to NOAA); Coast and Geodetic Survey to National Ocean Survey; and Weather Bureau to National Weather Service.

## REPEALS

Act June 17, 1910, ch. 301, §4, 36 Stat. 537, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by act Aug. 4, 1949, ch. 393, §20, 63 Stat. 561.

Act June 30, 1932, ch. 314, §501, 47 Stat. 415, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 89–554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 648 and Pub. L. 97–258, §5(b), Sept. 13, 1982, 96 Stat. 1068, 1074.

Act May 27, 1936, ch. 463, §1, 49 Stat. 1380, cited as a credit to this section, was repealed by Pub. L. 89–554, §8(a), Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 649.

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS; ORGANIZATIONAL HISTORY

Functions of United States Fire Administration generally transferred to Federal Emergency Management Agency. For further details see Transfer of Functions note set out under section 2202 of this title.

Functions of Secretary of Commerce, Department of Commerce, and officers and components of Department of Commerce as they related to or were utilized by Office of Energy Programs within Department of Commerce, but limited to industrial energy conservation programs, transferred to, and vested in, Secretary of Energy as part of creation of Department of Energy by Pub. L. 95–91, Aug. 4, 1977, 91 Stat. 565. See section 7157 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

For transfer of functions of other officers, employees, and agencies of Department of Commerce, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of Commerce, with power to delegate, see Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title.

Public Roads Administration, which was redesignated Bureau of Public Roads and, with its functions, transferred from Federal Works Agency to General Services Administration by section 103(a) of act June 30, 1949 (set out as section 753 of Title 40, Public Buildings, Property, and Works), was subsequently transferred to Department of Commerce, and then to Department of Transportation, by Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1949, as amend-

ed, which is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Federal Maritime Board was created as an agency within Department of Commerce by Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, §§ 101, 106, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, and sections 103 to 105 of the Plan transferred to Board and its chairman certain functions of former United States Maritime Commission and chairman thereof. Section 307 of the Plan provided that functions transferred to Federal Maritime Board and its chairman should not be subject to the provisions of Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, also eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out in note under section 1501 of this title, which, with a few additional exceptions, transferred functions of all officers, agencies, and employees of Department of Commerce to Secretary of Commerce, and authorized him to delegate any functions so transferred, or any of his other functions, to any of such officers, agencies and employees. Section 304 of Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, 26 F.R. 7315, 75 Stat. 840, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, abolished Federal Maritime Board, including offices of members of Board. Functions of Board transferred either to Federal Maritime Commission, which was established as an independent body, or to Secretary of Commerce by sections 103 and 202 of Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961.

Maritime Administration, with a Maritime Administrator at its head, was established in Department of Commerce by Reorg. Plan No. 21 of 1950, § 201, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, and section 204 of the Plan transferred certain functions of former United States Maritime Commission and its Chairman to Secretary of Commerce, with power vested in Secretary to authorize their performance by Administrator. Section 307 of the Plan provided that functions transferred to Secretary by that Plan should not be subject to provisions of Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, also eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out in note under section 1501 of this title, which, with a few additional exceptions, transferred functions of all other officers, agencies, and employees of Department of Commerce to Secretary of Commerce, and authorized him to delegate any functions so transferred, or any of his other functions, to any of such officers, agencies, and employees.

Section 304 of Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961, eff. Aug. 12, 1961, 26 F.R. 7315, 75 Stat. 840, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, abolished Federal Maritime Board, including offices of members of Board. Functions of Board transferred either to Federal Maritime Commission, which was established as an independent body, or to Secretary of Commerce by sections 103 and 202 of Reorg. Plan No. 7 of 1961.

Maritime Administration of Department of Commerce transferred to Department of Transportation, and all related functions of Secretary and other officers and offices of Department of Commerce transferred to Department of Transportation and vested in Secretary of Transportation, see section 1601 et seq. of Title 46, Appendix, Shipping.

Community Relations Service transferred from Department of Commerce to Department of Justice by Reorg. Plan No. 1 of 1966, eff. Apr. 22, 1966, 31 F.R. 6187, 80 Stat. 1607, set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

Department of Commerce, prior to act Mar. 4, 1913, was known as Department of Commerce and Labor. The following agencies which were placed under jurisdiction of Department of Commerce and Labor by act Feb. 13, 1903, which act established the Department, were abolished or transferred as follows:

Office of United States Shipping Commissioner abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1946, §§ 101 to 104, eff. July 16, 1946, which transferred functions to Commandant of Coast Guard and Commissioner of Customs. See Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

Bureau of Navigation and the Steamboat Inspection Service consolidated into Bureau of Navigation and Steamboat Inspection by act June 30, 1932, which name was changed to Bureau of Marine Inspection and Navigation by act May 27, 1936, cited to text. Bureau abol-

ished and functions transferred to Commandant of Coast Guard and Commissioner of Customs by Reorg. Plan No. 3 of 1946. See Appendix to Title 5.

Bureau of Fisheries transferred to Department of the Interior by section 4(e) of Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939. Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939 is set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

Bureau of Immigration changed to Bureau of Immigration and Naturalization by act June 29, 1906, ch. 3592, § 1, 34 Stat. 596. Commissioner General of Immigration, Commissioners of Immigration, and Bureau of Immigration and Naturalization, transferred to Department of Labor by act Mar. 4, 1913. Subsequently, by Ex. Ord. No. 6166, § 14 of June 10, 1933, and Reorg. Plan No. V of 1940, eff. June 14, 1940, 5 F.R. 2223, 54 Stat. 1238, Bureau of Immigration and Bureau of Naturalization consolidated to form Immigration and Naturalization Service and transferred to Department of Justice.

Light-House Board and Light-House Establishment consolidated under Bureau of Lighthouses by act June 17, 1910, ch. 301, § 4, 36 Stat. 537. Bureau of Lighthouses transferred to Coast Guard in Department of the Treasury by Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939, § 2(a). Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939 is set out in the Appendix to Title 5. Said section 4 of act June 17, 1910, was repealed by section 20 of act Aug. 4, 1949, section 1 of which reestablished Coast Guard by enacting Title 14, Coast Guard. Coast Guard transferred to Department of Transportation, and all functions, powers, and duties relating to Coast Guard of Secretary of the Treasury and of other officers and offices of Department of the Treasury transferred to Secretary of Transportation by Pub. L. 89-670, § 6(b)(1), Oct. 15, 1966, 80 Stat. 938. Section 6(b)(2) of Pub. L. 89-670, however, provided that notwithstanding such transfer of functions, Coast Guard shall operate as part of Navy in time of war or when President directs as provided in section 3 of Title 14, Coast Guard. See section 108 of Title 49, Transportation.

Bureau of Mines transferred from Department of the Interior to Department of Commerce by Ex. Ord. No. 4239, eff. July 1, 1925, and retransferred to Department of the Interior by Ex. Ord. No. 6611, Feb. 24, 1934.

The following agencies acquired their status in the manner indicated:

Bureau of Foreign and Domestic Commerce resulted from a consolidation of Bureau of Manufactures and Bureau of Statistics by act Aug. 23, 1912.

Civil Aeronautics Authority [Civil Aeronautics Board] transferred to Department of Commerce by section 7 of Reorg. Plan No. IV of 1940, set out in the Appendix to Title 5. For transfer of functions of Civil Aeronautics Board see section 1551 et seq. and section 1655(d) of former Title 49, Transportation.

Inland Waterways Corporation transferred to Department of Commerce by section 6 of Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939. Reorg. Plan No. II of 1939 is set out in the Appendix to Title 5. Pub. L. 88-67, § 2, July 19, 1963, 77 Stat. 81, provided generally for liquidation of affairs of Inland Waterways Corporation.

Patent Office transferred from Department of the Interior by Ex. Ord. of Mar. 17, 1925, as authorized by section 12 of act Feb. 14, 1903. See section 1517 of this title.

Environmental Science Services Administration in Department of Commerce, including offices of Administrator and Deputy Administrator thereof, abolished by Reorg. Plan No. 4 of 1970, eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, which created National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in Department of Commerce and transferred personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of funds of Environmental Science Services Administration to such newly created National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Components of Environmental Science Services Administration thus transferred included Weather Bureau, Coast and Geodetic Survey, Environmental Data Service, National Environmental Satellite Center, and ESSA Research Laboratories.

Weather Bureau transferred from Department of Agriculture by section 8 of Reorg. Plan No. IV of 1940.

Reorg. Plan IV of 1940 is set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Coast and Geodetic Survey and Weather Bureau consolidated to form a new agency in Department of Commerce known as Environmental Science Services Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1965, eff. July 13, 1965, 30 F.R. 8819, 79 Stat. 4443, set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

Functions, powers, and duties of Office of Audits and Investigations and Inspections Staff and that portion of office referred to as Office of Investigations and Security which had responsibility for investigation of alleged criminal violations and program abuse in Department of Commerce transferred to Office of Inspector General in Department of Commerce, as established by Pub. L. 95-452, § 2, Oct. 12, 1978, 92 Stat. 1101, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. See section 9(a)(1)(B) of Pub. L. 95-452, set out in the Appendix to Title 5.

#### REORGANIZATION PLAN NO. 4 OF 1970

Eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090, as amended Pub. L. 94-461, § 4(c)(1), Oct. 8, 1976, 90 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 95-219, § 3(a)(1), Dec. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1613; Pub. L. 98-498, title III, § 320(c)(3), Oct. 19, 1984, 98 Stat. 2309; Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, § 407(d), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3739

Prepared by the President and transmitted to the Senate and the House of Representatives in Congress assembled, July 9, 1970, pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 9 of Title 5 of the United States Code.

#### NATIONAL OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC ADMINISTRATION

##### SECTION 1. TRANSFERS TO SECRETARY OF COMMERCE

The following are hereby transferred to the Secretary of Commerce:

(a) All functions vested by law in the Bureau of Commercial Fisheries of the Department of the Interior or in its head, together with all functions vested by law in the Secretary of the Interior or the Department of the Interior which are administered through that Bureau or are primarily related to the Bureau, exclusive of functions with respect to (1) Great Lakes fishery research and activities related to the Great Lakes Fisheries Commission, (2) Missouri River Reservoir research, (3) the Gulf Breeze Biological Laboratory of the said Bureau at Gulf Breeze, Florida, and (4) Trans-Alaska pipeline investigations.

(b) The functions vested in the Secretary of the Interior by the Act of September 22, 1959 (Public Law 86-359, 73 Stat. 642, 16 U.S.C. 760c-760g; relating to migratory marine species of game fish).

(c) The functions vested by law in the Secretary of the Interior, or in the Department of the Interior or in any officer or instrumentality of that Department, which are administered through the Marine Minerals Technology Center of the Bureau of Mines.

(d) All functions vested in the National Science Foundation by the National Sea Grant College and Program Act of 1966 (80 Stat. 988), as amended (33 U.S.C. 1121 et seq.).

(e) Those functions vested in the Secretary of Defense or in any officer, employee, or organizational entity of the Department of Defense by the provision of Public Law 91-144, 83 Stat. 326, under the heading "Operation and maintenance, general" with respect to "surveys and charting of northern and northwestern lakes and connecting waters," or by other law, which come under the mission assigned as of July 1, 1969, to the United States Army Engineer District, Lake Survey, Corps of Engineers, Department of the Army and relate to (1) the conduct of hydrographic surveys of the Great Lakes and their outflow rivers, Lake Champlain, New York State Barge Canals, and the Minnesota-Ontario border lakes, and the compilation and publication of navigation charts, including recreational aspects, and the Great Lakes Pilot for the benefit and use of the public, (2) the conception, planning, and conduct of basic re-

search and development in the fields of water motion, water characteristics, water quantity, and ice and snow, and (3) the publication of data and the results of research projects in forms useful to the Corps of Engineers and the public, and the operation of a Regional Data Center for the collection, coordination, analysis, and the furnishing to interested agencies of data relating to water resources of the Great Lakes.

(f) So much of the functions of the transferor officers and agencies referred to in or affected by the foregoing provisions of this section as is incidental to or necessary for the performance by or under the Secretary of Commerce of the functions transferred by those provisions or relates primarily to those functions. The transfers to the Secretary of Commerce made by this section shall be deemed to include the transfer of authority, provided by law, to prescribe regulations relating primarily to the transferred functions.

##### SEC. 2. ESTABLISHMENT OF ADMINISTRATION

(a) There is hereby established in the Department of Commerce an agency which shall be known as the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, hereinafter referred to as the "Administration."

(b) There shall be at the head of the Administration the Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, hereinafter referred to as the "Administrator." The Administrator shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall be compensated at the rate now or hereafter provided for Level III of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5314).

(c) There shall be in the Administration a Deputy Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall be compensated at the rate now or hereafter provided for Level IV of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5315). The Deputy Administrator shall perform such functions as the Administrator shall from time to time assign or delegate, and shall act as Administrator during the absence or disability of the Administrator or in the event of a vacancy in the office of Administrator.

(d) There shall be in the Administration a Chief Scientist of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration who shall be appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and shall be compensated at the rate now or hereafter provided for Level V of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5316). The Chief Scientist shall be the principal scientific adviser to the Administrator, and shall perform such other duties as the Administrator may direct. The Chief Scientist shall be an individual who is, by reason of scientific education and experience, knowledgeable in the principles of oceanic, atmospheric, or other scientific disciplines important to the work of the Administration. [As amended Pub. L. 94-461, § 4(c)(1), Oct. 8, 1976, 90 Stat. 1969; Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, § 407(d), Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3739.]

(e)(1) There shall be in the Administration a General Counsel and five Assistant Administrators, one of whom shall be the Assistant Administrator for Coastal Zone Management and one of whom shall be the Assistant Administrator for Fisheries. The General Counsel and each Assistant Administrator shall be appointed by the Secretary, subject to approval of the President, and shall be compensated at a rate now or hereafter provided for level V of the Executive Schedule Pay Rates (5 U.S.C. 5316).

(2) The General Counsel shall serve as the chief legal officer for all legal matters which may arise in connection with the conduct of the functions of the Administration.

(3) The Assistant Administrator for Coastal Zone Management shall be an individual who is, by reason of background and experience, especially qualified to direct the implementation and administration of the Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451 et seq.).

(4) The Assistant Administrator for Fisheries shall be responsible for all matters related to living marine resources which may arise in connection with the conduct of the functions of the Administration. [As amended Pub. L. 95-219, §3(a)(1), Dec. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1613.]

(f) The President may appoint in the Administration, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, two commissioned officers to serve at any one time as the designated heads of two principal constituent organizational entities of the Administration, or the President may designate one such officer as the head of such an organizational entity and the other as the head of the commissioned corps of the Administration. Any such designation shall create a vacancy on the active list and the officer while serving under this subsection shall have the rank, pay, and allowances of a rear admiral (upper half).

(g) Any commissioned officer of the Administration who has served under (d) or (f) and is retired while so serving or is retired after the completion of such service while serving in a lower rank or grade, shall be retired with the rank, pay, and allowances authorized by law for the highest grade and rank held by him; but any such officer, upon termination of his appointment in a rank above that of captain, shall, unless appointed or assigned to some other position for which a higher rank or grade is provided, revert to the grade and number he would have occupied had he not served in a rank above that of captain and such officer shall be an extra number in that grade.

### SEC. 3. PERFORMANCE OF TRANSFERRED FUNCTIONS

The provisions of sections 2 and 4 of Reorganization Plan No. 5 of 1950 (64 Stat. 1263) shall be applicable to the functions transferred hereunder to the Secretary of Commerce.

### SEC. 4. INCIDENTAL TRANSFERS

(a) So much of the personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations, and other funds employed, used, held, available, or to be made available in connection with the functions transferred to the Secretary of Commerce by this reorganization plan as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall determine shall be transferred to the Department of Commerce at such time or times as the Director shall direct.

(b) Such further measures and dispositions as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall deem to be necessary in order to effectuate the transfers referred to in subsection (a) of this section shall be carried out in such manner as he shall direct and by such agencies as he shall designate.

(c) The personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations, and other funds of the Environmental Science Services Administration shall become personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or of such other organizational entity or entities of the Department of Commerce as the Secretary of Commerce shall determine.

(d) The Commissioned Officer Corps of the Environmental Science Services Administration shall become the Commissioned Officer Corps of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. Members of the Corps, including those appointed hereafter, shall be entitled to all rights, privileges, and benefits heretofore available under any law to commissioned officers of the Environmental Science Services Administration, including those rights, privileges, and benefits heretofore accorded by law to commissioned officers of the former Coast and Geodetic Survey.

(e) Any personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations, and other funds of the Bureau of Commercial Fisheries not otherwise transferred shall become personnel, property, records, and unexpended balances of such organizational entity or entities of the Department of the Interior as the Secretary of the Interior shall determine.

### SEC. 5. INTERIM OFFICERS

(a) The President may authorize any person who immediately prior to the effective date of this reorganization plan held a position in the executive branch of the Government to act as Administrator until the office of Administrator is for the first time filled pursuant to provisions of this reorganization plan or by recess appointment, as the case may be.

(b) The President may similarly authorize any such person to act as Deputy Administrator and authorize any such person to act as Associate Administrator.

(c) The President may similarly authorize a member of the former Commissioned Officer Corps of the Environmental Science Services Administration to act as the head of one principal constituent organizational entity of the Administration.

(d) The President may authorize any person who serves in an acting capacity under the foregoing provisions of this section to receive the compensation attached to the office in respect of which he so serves. Such compensation, if authorized, shall be in lieu of, but not in addition to, other compensation from the United States to which such person may be entitled.

### SEC. 6. ABOLITIONS

(a) Subject to the provisions of this reorganization plan, the following, exclusive of any functions, are hereby abolished:

(1) The Environmental Science Services Administration in the Department of Commerce (established by Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1965, 79 Stat. 1318), including the offices of Administrator of the Environmental Science Services Administration and Deputy Administrator of the Environmental Science Services Administration.

(2) The Bureau of Commercial Fisheries in the Department of the Interior (16 U.S.C. 742b), including the office of Director of the Bureau of Commercial Fisheries.

(b) Such provisions as may be necessary with respect to terminating any outstanding affairs shall be made by the Secretary of Commerce in the case of the Environmental Science Services Administration and by the Secretary of the Interior in the case of the Bureau of Commercial Fisheries.

### MESSAGE OF THE PRESIDENT<sup>1</sup>

To the Congress of the United States:

I transmit herewith Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970, prepared in accordance with chapter 9 of title 5 of the United States Code. The plan would transfer to the Secretary of Commerce various functions relating to the oceans and atmosphere, including commercial fishery functions, and would establish a National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in the Department of Commerce. My reasons for transmitting this plan are stated in a more extended accompanying message.

After investigation, I have found and hereby declare that each reorganization included in Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970 is necessary to accomplish one or more of the purposes set forth in section 901(a) of title 5 of the United States Code. In particular, the plan is responsive to section 901(a)(1), "to promote the better execution of the laws, the more effective management of the executive branch and of its agencies and functions, and the expeditious administration of the public business;" and section 901(a)(3), "to increase the efficiency of the operations of the Government to the fullest extent practicable."

The reorganizations provided for in the plan make necessary the appointment and compensation of new officers as specified in section 2 of the plan. The rates of compensation fixed for these officers are comparable to those fixed for other officers in the executive branch who have similar responsibilities.

<sup>1</sup>For additional Message of the President see Reorganization Plan No. 3 of 1970, Title 5, Appendix, Government Officers and Employees.

The reorganization plan should result in the more efficient operation of the Government. It is not practical, however, to itemize or aggregate the exact expenditure reductions which will result from this action.

RICHARD NIXON.

THE WHITE HOUSE, July 9, 1970.

EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 11567

Ex. Ord. No. 11567, Nov. 16, 1970, 35 F.R. 17701, which prescribed the compensation of the Director and Deputy Director of the Bureau of Domestic Commerce, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 11759, Jan. 15, 1974, 39 F.R. 2077, formerly set out below.

EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 11759

Ex. Ord. No. 11759, Jan. 15, 1974, 39 F.R. 2077, which related to compensation of certain officials in the Domestic and International Business Administration, was superseded by Ex. Ord. No. 12096, Nov. 2, 1978, 43 F.R. 51597, formerly set out below.

EXECUTIVE ORDER No. 12096

Ex. Ord. No. 12096, Nov. 2, 1978, 43 F.R. 51597, which related to compensation of certain officials in the Industry and Trade Administration, was revoked by Ex. Ord. No. 12188, Jan. 2, 1980, 45 F.R. 989, set out as a note under section 2171 of Title 19, Customs Duties.

**§ 1511a. Repealed. Pub. L. 95-219, § 3(a)(2), Dec. 28, 1977, 91 Stat. 1613**

Section, Pub. L. 94-370, § 15(a), July 26, 1976, 90 Stat. 1032, authorized appointment and set forth compensation level for an Associate Administrator for Coastal Zone Management.

**§ 1511b. United States fishery trade officers**

**(a) Appointment**

For purposes of carrying out export promotion and other fishery development responsibilities, the Secretary of Commerce (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Secretary") shall appoint not fewer than six officers who shall serve abroad to promote United States fishing interests. These officers shall be knowledgeable about the United States fishing industry, preferably with experience derived from the harvesting, processing, or marketing sectors of the industry or from the administration of fisheries programs. Such officers, who shall be employees of the Department of Commerce, shall have the designation of fishery trade officers.

**(b) Assignment**

Upon the request of the Secretary, the Secretary of State shall officially assign fishery trade officers to such diplomatic missions of the United States as the Secretary designates (three of which shall be those in Brussels, Belgium; Rome, Italy; and Tokyo, Japan) and shall obtain for them diplomatic privileges and immunities equivalent to those enjoyed by foreign service personnel of comparable rank and salary.

**(c) Functions of fishery trade officers**

The functions of fishery trade officers appointed under subsection (a) of this section shall be—

- (1) to increase the effectiveness of United States fishery export promotion efforts through such activities as the coordination of market development efforts and the provision of services and facilities for exporters of United States fishery products;

(2) to develop, maintain, and make available to interested persons listings of (A) trade, government, and other organizations that are concerned with, or have an interest in, international trade in United States fishery products, and (B) United States fishery products available for such trade;

(3) to prepare quarterly reports regarding (A) the supply, demand, and prices of each United States fishery product exported, or for which there may be export potential, to the foreign nation or area concerned, and (B) the trade barriers or incentives of such nation or area that affect imports of such products;

(4) to prepare weekly statements regarding the prices for each fishery product for which there may be United States export potential to the foreign nation or area concerned; and

(5) to carry out such other functions as the Secretary may require.

**(d) Administration**

The Secretary of State and the Secretary shall enter into cooperative arrangements concerning the provision of office space, equipment, facilities, clerical services, and such other administrative support as may be required for fishery trade officers and their families.

(Pub. L. 96-561, title II, § 211, Dec. 22, 1980, 94 Stat. 3290.)

**§ 1511c. Estuarine Programs Office**

**(a) Establishment**

The Administrator of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (hereinafter in this section referred to as the "Administrator") shall establish within the Administration an Estuarine Programs Office.

**(b) Functions**

The Estuarine Programs Office shall—

(1) develop and implement a national estuarine strategy for the Administration that integrates the research, regulatory, and trustee responsibilities of the Administration;

(2) coordinate the estuarine activities of the various organizations within the Administration, including activities in estuarine research and assessment, fisheries research, coastal management, and habitat conservation;

(3) coordinate the estuarine activities of the Administration with the activities of other Federal and State agencies; and

(4) provide technical assistance to the Administrator, to other Federal agencies, and to State and local government agencies in—

(A) assessing the condition of estuaries;

(B) identifying estuaries of critical national or regional importance;

(C) identifying technical and management alternatives for the restoration and protection of estuarine resources; and

(D) monitoring the implementation and effectiveness of estuarine management plans.

**(c) Authorization**

There are authorized to be appropriated to the Administration not to exceed \$500,000 for fiscal year 1987, \$530,000 for fiscal year 1988, \$560,000 for fiscal year 1989, and \$600,000 for fiscal year 1990 to carry out the provisions of this section.

(Pub. L. 99-659, title IV, § 406, Nov. 14, 1986, 100 Stat. 3738.)

**§ 1511d. Chesapeake Bay Estuarine Resources Office**

**(a) Establishment**

(1) The Secretary of Commerce shall establish, within the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, an office to be known as the Chesapeake Bay Estuarine Resources Office (hereinafter referred to as the "Office").

(2) The Office shall be headed by a Director who shall be appointed by the Secretary of Commerce, in consultation with the Chesapeake Bay Executive Council. Any individual appointed as Director shall have knowledge and experience in research or resource management efforts in the Chesapeake Bay.

(3) The Director may appoint such additional personnel for the Office as the Director determines necessary to carry out this section.

**(b) Functions**

The Office, in consultation with the Chesapeake Bay Executive Council, shall—

(1) provide technical assistance to the Administrator, to other Federal departments and agencies, and to State and local government agencies in—

(A) assessing the processes that shape the Chesapeake Bay system and affect its living resources;

(B) identifying technical and management alternatives for the restoration and protection of living resources and the habitats they depend upon; and

(C) monitoring the implementation and effectiveness of management plans;

(2) develop and implement a strategy for the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration that integrates the science, research, monitoring, data collection, regulatory, and management responsibilities of the Secretary of Commerce in such a manner as to assist the cooperative, intergovernmental Chesapeake Bay Program to meet the commitments of the Chesapeake Bay Agreement;

(3) coordinate the programs and activities of the various organizations within the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and the Chesapeake Bay Regional Sea Grant Programs (including programs and activities in coastal and estuarine research, monitoring, and assessment; fisheries research and stock assessments; data management; remote sensing; coastal management; and habitat conservation);

(4) coordinate the activities of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration with the activities of the Environmental Protection Agency and other Federal, State, and local agencies;

(5) establish an effective mechanism which shall ensure that projects have undergone appropriate peer review and provide other appropriate means to determine that projects have acceptable scientific and technical merit for the purpose of achieving maximum utilization of available funds and resources to benefit the Chesapeake Bay area;

(6) remain cognizant of ongoing research, monitoring, and management projects and assist in the dissemination of the results and findings of those projects; and

(7) submit a biennial report to the Congress and the Secretary of Commerce with respect to the activities of the Office and on the progress made in protecting and restoring the living resources and habitat of the Chesapeake Bay.

**(c) Budget line item**

The Secretary of Commerce shall identify, in the President's annual budget to the Congress, the funding request for the Office.

**(d) Omitted**

**(e) Chesapeake Executive Council**

For purposes of this section, "Chesapeake Executive Council" means the representatives from the Commonwealth of Virginia, the State of Maryland, the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, the Environmental Protection Agency, the District of Columbia, and the Chesapeake Bay Commission, who are signatories to the Chesapeake Bay Agreement, and any future signatories to that Agreement.

(Pub. L. 102-567, title III, § 307, Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4284.)

CODIFICATION

Section is comprised of section 307 of Pub. L. 102-567. Subsec. (d) of section 307 of Pub. L. 102-567 amended section 2 of Pub. L. 98-210, 97 Stat. 1409, which is not classified to the Code.

**§ 1512. Powers and duties of Department**

It shall be the province and duty of said Department to foster, promote, and develop the foreign and domestic commerce, the mining, manufacturing, and fishery industries of the United States; and to this end it shall be vested with jurisdiction and control of the departments, bureaus, offices, and branches of the public service hereinafter specified, and with such other powers and duties as may be prescribed by law.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, § 3, 32 Stat. 826; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97-31, § 12(7), 95 Stat. 154.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 596 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5 by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-31 struck out references to shipping and transportation facilities.

EMERGENCY PREPAREDNESS FUNCTIONS

For assignment of certain emergency preparedness functions to the Secretary of Commerce, see Parts 1, 2, and 4 of Ex. Ord. No. 12656, Nov. 18, 1988, 53 F.R. 47491, set out as a note under section 5195 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

EX. ORD. NO. 12864. UNITED STATES ADVISORY COUNCIL ON THE NATIONAL INFORMATION INFRASTRUCTURE

Ex. Ord. No. 12864, Sept. 15, 1993, 58 F.R. 48773, as amended by Ex. Ord. No. 12890, Dec. 30, 1993, 59 F.R. 499; Ex. Ord. No. 12921, June 13, 1994, 59 F.R. 30667; Ex. Ord. No. 12970, Sept. 14, 1995, 60 F.R. 48359, provided:

By the authority vested in me as President by the Constitution and the laws of the United States of America, including the Federal Advisory Committee Act, as amended (5 U.S.C. App. 2) ("Act"), and section 301 of title 3, United States Code, it is hereby ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. *Establishment.* (a) There is established in the Commerce Department the "United States Advisory Council on the National Information Infrastructure" ("Council"). The Council shall consist of not more than 37 members to be appointed by the Secretary of Commerce ("Secretary").

(b) The Secretary shall appoint from among the members of the Council officials to serve as chairperson(s) or vice-chairperson(s) of the Council as he shall deem appropriate.

SEC. 2. *Functions.* (a) The Council shall advise the Secretary on matters related to the development of the National Information Infrastructure. The National Information Infrastructure shall be the integration of hardware, software, and skills that will make it easy and affordable to connect people with each other, with computers, and with a vast array of services and information resources.

(b) The Council shall advise the Secretary on a national strategy for promoting the development of a National Information Infrastructure. Issues that the Council may address include, but are not limited to:

(1) the appropriate roles of the private and public sectors in developing the National Information Infrastructure;

(2) a vision for the evolution of the National Information Infrastructure and its public and commercial applications;

(3) the impact of current and proposed regulatory regimes on the evolution of the National Information Infrastructure;

(4) national strategies for maximizing the benefits of the National Information Infrastructure, as measured by job creation, economic growth, increased productivity, and enhanced quality of life;

(5) national strategies for developing and demonstrating applications in areas such as electronic commerce, agile manufacturing, life-long learning, health care, government services, and civic networking;

(6) national security, emergency preparedness, system security, and network protection implications;

(7) national strategies for maximizing interconnection and inter-operability of communications networks;

(8) international issues associated with the National Information Infrastructure;

(9) universal access; and

(10) privacy, security, and copyright issues.

(c) The chairperson(s) may, from time to time, invite experts to submit information to the Council and may form subcommittees of the Council to review specific issues.

SEC. 3. *Administration.* (a) The heads of executive agencies shall, to the extent permitted by law, provide to the Council such information as it may require for the purpose of carrying out its functions.

(b) Members of the Council shall serve without compensation but shall be allowed travel expenses, including per diem in lieu of subsistence, as authorized by law, including 5 U.S.C. 5701-5707 and section 7(d) of the Act [5 App. U.S.C.], for persons serving intermittently in government service.

(c) The Department of Commerce shall provide the Council with administrative services, facilities, staff, and other support services necessary for the performance of its functions.

SEC. 4. *General.* (a) Notwithstanding any other Executive order, the functions of the President under the Act [5 App. U.S.C.] that are applicable to the Council, except that of reporting to Congress, shall be performed by the Secretary in accordance with guidelines that have been issued by the Administrator of General Services.

(b) The Council shall exist until June 1, 1996, unless otherwise extended.

(c) Members of the Council and its subcommittee shall not be considered special government employees for any purpose or for purposes of 18 U.S.C. 201-203, 205, 207-209, and 218-219.

WILLIAM J. CLINTON.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Clearing house for technical, scientific, and engineering information, see sections 1151 to 1157 of this title.

#### § 1513. Duties and powers vested in Department

All duties performed and all power and authority possessed or exercised by the head of any executive department in and over any bureau, office, officer, board, branch, or division of the public service transferred to the Department of Commerce, or any business arising therefrom or pertaining thereto, or in relation to the duties performed by and authority conferred by law upon such bureau, officer, office, board, branch, or division of the public service, whether of an appellate or revisory character or otherwise, shall be vested in and exercised by the Secretary of Commerce.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §10, 32 Stat. 829.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 599 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

For transfer of functions of other officers, employees, and agencies of Department of Commerce, with certain exceptions, to Secretary of Commerce, with power to delegate, see Reorg. Plan No. 5 of 1950, §§1, 2, eff. May 24, 1950, 15 F.R. 3174, 64 Stat. 1263, set out as a note under section 1501 of this title.

#### GOVERNMENT INTEREST IN PATENTS

For duties and powers of Secretary of Commerce with respect to interest of Government in patents, see executive orders set out as notes under section 266 of Title 35, Patents.

#### FOREIGN INVESTMENT IN THE UNITED STATES

For functions of Secretary of Commerce respecting collection and use of data on foreign investment in United States, see Sec. 2 of Ex. Ord. No. 11858, May 7, 1975, 40 F.R. 20263, set out as a note under section 78b of this title.

#### § 1514. Basic authority for performance of certain functions and activities of Department

Appropriations are authorized for the following activities of the Department of Commerce:

(a) furnishing to employees of the Department of Commerce and other Federal agencies (including Army, Navy, and Air Force personnel where Army, Navy, or Air Force facilities or supplies are not available and upon request of the service concerned), and their dependents, in Alaska and other points outside the continental United States, free emergency medical services by contract or otherwise and free emergency medical supplies, where in the judgment of the Secretary furnishing of such supplies and services is necessary;

(b) when deemed necessary by the Secretary of Commerce, purchasing, transporting, stor-

ing, and distributing food and other subsistence supplies for resale to employees of the Department of Commerce and other Federal agencies (including Army, Navy, and Air Force personnel where Army, Navy, or Air Force facilities or supplies are not available and upon request of the service concerned), and their dependents, in Alaska and other points outside the continental United States at a reasonable value as determined by the Secretary of Commerce, the proceeds from such resales to be credited to the appropriation from which the expenditure was made;

(c) when deemed necessary by the Secretary of Commerce, the establishment, maintenance, and operation of messing facilities, by contract or otherwise, in Alaska and other points outside the continental United States where suitable family facilities are not available, such service to be furnished to employees of the Department of Commerce and other Federal agencies (including Army, Navy, and Air Force personnel where Army, Navy, or Air Force facilities are not available and upon request of the service concerned), and their dependents, in accordance with regulations established by the Secretary of Commerce, and at a reasonable value determined in accordance therewith, the proceeds from the furnishing of such services to be credited to the appropriation from which the expenditures are made;

(d) reimbursement, under regulations prescribed by the Secretary, of officers and employees in or under the Department of Commerce, for food, clothing, medicines, and other supplies furnished by them in emergencies for the temporary relief of distressed persons in remote localities;

(e) providing motion-picture equipment and film for recreation of crews of vessels of the National Ocean Survey, for recreation of employees in remote localities where such facilities are not available, and for training purposes;

(f) erecting, altering, repairing, equipping, furnishing, and maintaining, by contract or otherwise, such living and working quarters and facilities as may be necessary to carry out its authorized work at remote localities not on foreign soil where such living and working accommodations are not otherwise available.

(Oct. 26, 1949, ch. 733, 63 Stat. 907; Aug. 30, 1954, ch. 1076, §1(11), 68 Stat. 967; Jan. 2, 1975, Pub. L. 93-608, §1(3), 88 Stat. 1967.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 596a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### AMENDMENTS

1975—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-608 struck out proviso requiring an annual report to Congress of the total expenditures made for such supplies and total proceeds from resales.

1954—Subsec. (c). Act Aug. 30, 1954, struck out proviso requiring the Secretary of Commerce to submit annually to Congress a report showing the expenditures for the establishment, maintenance, and operation of messing facilities in Alaska and other points outside the continental United States.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Coast and Geodetic Survey consolidated with National Weather Bureau in 1965 to form Environmental Science Services Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1965, eff. July 13, 1965, 30 F.R. 8819, 79 Stat. 1318. Environmental Science Services Administration abolished in 1970 and its personnel, property, records, etc., transferred to National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration by Reorg. Plan No. 4 of 1970, eff. Oct. 3, 1970, 35 F.R. 15627, 84 Stat. 2090, set out as a note under section 1511 of this title. By order of Acting Associate Administrator of National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, 35 F.R. 19249, Dec. 19, 1970, Coast and Geodetic Survey redesignated National Ocean Survey. See notes under section 311 of this title.

#### § 1515. Records, etc., of bureaus transferred to Department of Commerce

The official records and papers on file in and pertaining exclusively to the business of any bureau, office, department, or branch of the public service transferred to the Department of Commerce, together with the furniture in use in such bureau, office, department, or branch of the public service, are transferred to the Department of Commerce.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §4, 32 Stat. 826.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 598 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Act Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, provided that Department of Commerce and Labor and Secretary of Commerce and Labor were to be thereafter called Department of Commerce and Secretary of Commerce.

#### § 1516. Statistical information

The Secretary of Commerce shall have control of the work of gathering and distributing statistical information naturally relating to the subjects confided to his department; and he shall have the power and authority to rearrange the statistical work of the bureaus and offices confided to the Department of Commerce, and to consolidate any of the statistical bureaus and offices above described. He shall also have authority to call upon other departments of the Government for statistical data and results obtained by them; and he may collate, arrange, and publish such statistical information so obtained in such manner as to him may seem wise.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §4, 32 Stat. 826.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 601 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

#### CHANGE OF NAME

Act Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, provided that Department of Commerce and Labor and Secretary of Commerce and Labor were to be thereafter called Department of Commerce and Secretary of Commerce.

#### CROSS REFERENCES

Statistical information generally, see section 172 et seq. of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 7 section 2276.

**§ 1516a. Statistics relating to social, health, and economic conditions of Americans of Spanish origin or descent**

The Department of Commerce, the Department of Labor, the Department of Health and Human Services, and the Department of Agriculture shall each collect, and publish regularly, statistics which indicate the social, health, and economic condition of Americans of Spanish origin or descent.

(Pub. L. 94-311, §2, June 16, 1976, 90 Stat. 688; Pub. L. 96-88, title V, §509(b), Oct. 17, 1979, 93 Stat. 695.)

CHANGE OF NAME

“Department of Health and Human Services” substituted for “Department of Health, Education, and Welfare” pursuant to section 509(b) of Pub. L. 96-88, which is classified to section 3508(b) of Title 20, Education.

DEVELOPMENT OF PROGRAM FOR THE COLLECTION, ANALYSIS AND PUBLICATION OF DATA

Section 3 of Pub. L. 94-311 provided that: “The Director of the Office of Management and Budget, in cooperation with the Secretary of Commerce and with the heads of other data-gathering Federal agencies, shall develop a Government-wide program for the collection, analysis, and publication of data with respect to Americans of Spanish origin or descent.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 7 section 2276.

**§ 1517. Transfer of statistical or scientific work**

The President is authorized, by order in writing, to transfer at any time the whole or any part of any office, bureau, division, or other branch of the public service engaged in statistical or scientific work, from the Department of State, the Department of the Treasury, the Department of Defense, the Department of Justice, the United States Postal Service, or the Department of the Interior, to the Department of Commerce; and in every such case the duties and authority performed by and conferred by law upon such office, bureau, division, or other branch of the public service, or the part thereof so transferred, shall be thereby transferred with such office, bureau, division, or other branch of the public service, or the part thereof which is so transferred. All power and authority conferred by law, both supervisory and appellate, upon the department from which such transfer is made, or the Secretary thereof, in relation to the said office, bureau, division, or other branch of the public service, or the part thereof so transferred, shall immediately, when such transfer is so ordered by the President, be fully conferred upon and vested in the Department of Commerce, or the Secretary thereof, as the case may be, as to the whole or part of such office, bureau, division, or other branch of the public service so transferred.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §12, 32 Stat. 830; July 26, 1947, ch. 343, title II, §201(a), 61 Stat. 499; Aug. 10, 1949, ch. 412, §4, 63 Stat. 579; Aug. 12, 1970, Pub. L. 91-375, §§4(a), 6(o), 84 Stat. 773, 783.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 602 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title

5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

CHANGE OF NAME

“United States Postal Service” substituted for “Post Office Department” in text pursuant to Pub. L. 91-375, §§4(a), 6(o), Aug. 12, 1970, 84 Stat. 773, 783, which are set out as notes preceding section 101 of Title 39, Postal Service, and under section 201 of Title 39, respectively, which abolished Post Office Department, transferred its functions to United States Postal Service, and provided that references in other laws to Post Office Department shall be considered a reference to United States Postal Service.

Department of Defense substituted for Departments of the Army and Navy by act July 26, 1947, as amended Aug. 10, 1949.

Act Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, provided that Department of Commerce and Labor and Secretary of Commerce and Labor were to be thereafter called Department of Commerce and Secretary of Commerce.

METEOROLOGICAL SATELLITE (METSAT) AND ASSOCIATED GROUND SYSTEMS; EXPENDITURE OF FUNDS TO DEVELOP PROPOSALS TO TRANSFER OWNERSHIP TO PRIVATE ENTITIES PROHIBITED

Pub. L. 98-166, title I, §101, Nov. 28, 1983, 97 Stat. 1076, provided that: “No funds made available by this Act, or any other Act, may be used—

“(1) by the Source Evaluation Board for Civil Space Remote Sensing as established by the Secretary of Commerce to develop or issue a request for proposal to transfer the ownership or lease the use of any meteorological satellite (METSAT) or associated ground system to any private entity; or

“(2) by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration to transfer the ownership of any meteorological satellite (METSAT) or associated ground system to any private entity.”

CIVIL LAND REMOTE SENSING SATELLITE SYSTEM; TERMINATION

Pub. L. 98-52, title II, §202, July 15, 1983, 97 Stat. 285, as amended by Pub. L. 103-437, §5(b)(1), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4582, provided that: “Notwithstanding title II of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration Authorization Act, 1983 [Pub. L. 97-324, set out as a note below], the Secretary of Commerce shall not transfer the ownership or management of any civil land, meteorological, or ocean remote sensing space satellite system and associated ground system equipment unless, in addition to any other requirement of law—

“(1) the Secretary of Commerce or his designee has presented, in writing, to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate, and to the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology [now Committee on Science] of the House of Representatives and the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, a comprehensive statement of recommended policies, procedures, conditions, and limitations to which any transfer should be subject; and

“(2) the Congress thereafter enacts a law which contains such policies, procedures, conditions, or limitations (or a combination thereof) as it deems appropriate for any such transfer.”

Pub. L. 97-324, title II, §201, Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1601, as amended by Pub. L. 98-365, title VI, §608, July 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 466; Pub. L. 103-437, §5(b)(2), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4582, provided that:

“(a) The Secretary of Commerce is authorized to plan and provide for the management and operation of civil remote-sensing space systems, which may include the Landsat 4 and 5 satellites and associated ground system equipment transferred from the National Aeronautics and Space Administration; to provide for user fees; and to plan for the transfer of the operation of civil remote-sensing space systems to the private sector when in the national interest.

“(b)(1) As part of his planning for the transfer of the ownership and operation of civil operational land remote sensing satellite systems to the private sector the Secretary shall—

“(A) Conduct a study to define the current, projected, and potential needs of the government for land remote sensing data.

“(B) Determine and describe the equipment, software, and data inventory that could be transferred to the private sector.

“(C) Compare various feasible financial and organizational approaches for such a transfer. Criteria for the comparison should include considerations such as: maintenance of data continuity; maintenance of United States leadership; national security; international obligations; potential for market growth; marketing ability; sunk and projected cost to the Government; independence of subsidy or financial guarantee from the Government; potential of financial return to the Government; and price of data to users. The following institutional alternatives should be compared: (i) wholly private ownership and operation of the system by an entity competitively selected; (ii) phased-in Government/private ownership and operation; (iii) a legislatively chartered privately owned corporation; and (iv) continued ownership and operation by the Federal Government.

The Secretary shall complete these studies and report on them to the Congress by February 1, 1983.

“(2) In addition to the studies and comparisons called for in section 201(b)(1) the Secretary shall fund at least two parallel studies outside the government independently to assess the alternatives called for in section 201(b)(1)(C). These studies should be submitted to the Congress by April 1, 1983.

“(c) There is authorized to be appropriated \$14,955,000 for the fiscal year 1983, for the purpose of carrying out the provisions of this title [this note].

“(d) No moneys authorized by this title [this note] shall be used to transfer to the private sector the ownership or management of any civil land remote sensing space satellite system and associated ground system equipment unless (A) a period of thirty days has passed after the receipt by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President of the Senate, the House Committee on Science, Space, and Technology [now Committee on Science], and the Senate Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation, of a message from the Secretary of Commerce or his designee containing a full and complete plan for the action proposed to be taken together with the reasons therefor and expected funding impacts, or (B) each such committee before the expiration of such period has transmitted to the Secretary written notice to the effect that such committee has no objection to the proposed action.”

EX. ORD. NO. 11564. TRANSFER OF CERTAIN PROGRAMS AND ACTIVITIES TO SECRETARY OF COMMERCE

Ex. Ord. No. 11564, Oct. 6, 1970, 35 F.R. 15801, provided: By virtue of the authority vested in me by section 12 of the Act of February 14, 1903, as amended (15 U.S.C. 1517) [this section] and section 12(d) of the Act of October 15, 1966 (49 U.S.C. 1651 note), as President of the United States, and in further implementation of Reorganization Plan No. 4 of 1970 [set out as a note under section 1511 of this title] transferring certain functions to the Secretary of Commerce and establishing the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in the Department of Commerce, it is ordered as follows:

SECTION 1. (a) The following programs and activities are hereby transferred to the Secretary of Commerce:

(1) The National Oceanographic Instrumentation Center of the Department of the Navy, Department of Defense.

(2) The National Oceanographic Data Center of the Department of the Navy, Department of Defense.

(3) The Ocean Station Vessel Meteorological Program of the Department of the Navy, Department of Defense.

(4) The Trust Territories Upper Air Observation Program of the Department of the Navy, Department of Defense.

(5) The Hydroclimatic Network Program of the Corps of Engineers of the Department of the Army, Department of Defense.

(6) The National Data Buoy Development Project of the Coast Guard, Department of Transportation.

(b) All of the power and authority of the transferor Departments conferred by law which is related to or incidental to, in support of, or necessary for, the operation of the programs and activities transferred by subsection (a) above, may be utilized by the Secretary of Commerce for the operation of those programs and activities.

SEC. 2. (a) Such personnel and positions and so much of the property, records, and unexpended balances of appropriations, allocations, and other funds employed, used, held, authorized, affected, available, or to be made available in connection with the operation of the programs and activities transferred by section 1 hereof from the Department of Defense and the Department of Transportation as the Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall determine shall be transferred from those Departments to the Department of Commerce at such time or times as the Director shall direct.

(b) Subject to the direction of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, the appropriate officers of the Government shall make necessary administrative arrangements for the assumption by the Secretary of Commerce of the programs and activities so transferred.

RICHARD NIXON.

§ 1518. Custody of buildings; officers transferred

The Secretary of Commerce shall have charge, in the buildings or premises occupied by or appropriated to the Department of Commerce, of the library, furniture, fixtures, records, and other property pertaining to it or acquired for use in its business; and he shall be allowed to expend for periodicals and the purposes of the library, and for the rental of appropriate quarters for the accommodation of the Department of Commerce within the District of Columbia, and for all other incidental expenses, such sums as Congress may provide from time to time. Where any office, bureau, or branch of the public service transferred to the Department of Commerce is occupying rented buildings or premises, it may still continue to do so until other suitable quarters are provided for its use. All officers, clerks, and employees employed on February 14, 1903, in or by any of the bureaus, offices, departments, or branches of the public service transferred to the Department of Commerce are each and all transferred to said department, except where otherwise provided by law. All laws prescribing the work and defining the duties of the several bureaus, offices, departments, or branches of the public service transferred to and made a part of the Department of Commerce shall, so far as the same are not in conflict with the provisions of this Act, remain in full force and effect until otherwise provided by law.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, § 9, 32 Stat. 829.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, is act Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, 32 Stat. 825, as amended, which is classified to sections 175, 1501, 1504, 1510, 1511, 1512, 1513, 1515, 1516, 1517 to 1519 of this title.

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 603 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title

5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, provided that Department of Commerce and Labor and Secretary of Commerce and Labor were to be thereafter called Department of Commerce and Secretary of Commerce.

**§ 1519. Annual and special reports**

The Secretary of Commerce shall annually, at the close of each fiscal year, make a report in writing to Congress, giving an account of all moneys received and disbursed by him and his Department, and describing the work done by the Department in fostering, promoting, and developing the foreign and domestic commerce, the mining, manufacturing, and fishery industries; of the United States, and making such recommendations as he shall deem necessary for the effective performance of the duties and purposes of the Department. He shall also from time to time make such special investigations and reports as he may be required to do by the President, or by either House of Congress, or which he himself may deem necessary and urgent.

(Feb. 14, 1903, ch. 552, §8, 32 Stat. 829; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97-31, §12(7), 95 Stat. 154.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 604 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

AMENDMENTS

1981—Pub. L. 97-31 struck out references to shipping and transportation facilities.

CHANGE OF NAME

Act Mar. 4, 1913, ch. 141, 37 Stat. 736, provided that Department of Commerce and Labor and Secretary of Commerce and Labor were to be thereafter called Department of Commerce and Secretary of Commerce.

**§ 1519a. Repealed. Pub. L. 97-449, § 7(b), Jan. 12, 1983, 96 Stat. 2443**

Section, Pub. L. 96-371, §2, Oct. 3, 1980, 94 Stat. 1362; Pub. L. 97-31, §12(8), Aug. 6, 1981, 95 Stat. 154, required an annual report to Congress by the Secretary of Transportation respecting conditions of the public ports of the United States. See section 308(c) of Title 49, Transportation.

**§ 1520. Repealed. Pub. L. 91-412, § 3(d), Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 864**

Section, act Dec. 19, 1942, ch. 780, 56 Stat. 1067, authorized Secretary of Commerce to establish schedule of fees or charges for services or publications furnished by Department of Commerce, excepting Federal and State governments, provided for covering proceeds thereof into the Treasury as miscellaneous receipts, and specified that its provisions shall not alter, amend, modify, or repeal any existing law for prescription of fees or charges. See sections 1525 to 1527 of this title.

**§ 1521. Working capital fund; establishment; amount; uses; reimbursement**

There is established a working capital fund of \$100,000, without fiscal year limitation, for the payment of salaries and other expenses nec-

essary to the maintenance and operation of (1) central duplicating, photographic, drafting, and photostating services and (2) such other services as the Secretary, with the approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, determines may be performed more advantageously as central services; said fund to be reimbursed from applicable funds of bureaus, offices, and agencies for which services are performed on the basis of rates which shall include estimated or actual charges for personal services, materials, equipment (including maintenance, repairs, and depreciation) and other expenses: *Provided*, That such central services shall, to the fullest extent practicable, be used to make unnecessary the maintenance of separate like services in the bureaus, offices, and agencies of the Department: *Provided further*, That a separate schedule of expenditures and reimbursements, and a statement of the current assets and liabilities of the working capital fund as of the close of the last completed fiscal year, shall be included in the annual Budget.

(June 28, 1944, ch. 294, title III, §301, 58 Stat. 415; 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, §102, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 607 of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested by law (including reorganization plan) in Bureau of the Budget or Director of Bureau of the Budget transferred to President by section 101 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 102 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 redesignated Bureau of the Budget as Office of Management and Budget.

**§ 1522. Acceptance of gifts and bequests for purposes of the Department; separate fund; disbursements**

The Secretary of Commerce is hereby authorized to accept, hold, administer, and utilize gifts and bequests of property, both real and personal, for the purpose of aiding or facilitating the work of the Department of Commerce. Gifts and bequests of money and the proceeds from sales of other property received as gifts or bequests shall be deposited in the Treasury in a separate fund and shall be disbursed upon order of the Secretary of Commerce. Property accepted pursuant to this provision, and the proceeds thereof, shall be used as nearly as possible in accordance with the terms of the gift or bequest.

(Pub. L. 88-611, §1, Oct. 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 991.)

CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 608a of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, §1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

TRANSFER OF FUNDS

Section 4(b) of Pub. L. 88-611 provided that: "All gifts and bequests received under the provisions of law repealed by subsection (a) of this section [which repealed section 278a of this title, section 883g of Title 33, Navi-

gation and Navigable Waters, and section 1126(g) of former Title 46, Shipping] and all funds held on the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 2, 1964] in the United States Merchant Marine Academy general gift fund, established by subsection (g) of section 216 of the Merchant Marine Act, 1936 [section 1126(g) of former Title 46], shall be transferred to the fund authorized by this Act [sections 1522 to 1524 of this title] and shall be administered in accordance with the provisions of this Act [sections 1522 to 1524 of this title].”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1523, 1524 of this title; title 47 section 904.

### § 1523. Tax status of gifts and bequests of property

For the purpose of Federal income, estate, and gift taxes, property accepted under section 1522 of this title shall be considered as a gift or bequest to or for the use of the United States.

(Pub. L. 88-611, § 2, Oct. 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 991.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 608b of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

### § 1524. Investment and reinvestments of moneys; credit and disbursement of interest

Upon the request of the Secretary of Commerce, the Secretary of the Treasury may invest and reinvest in securities of the United States or in securities guaranteed as to principal and interest by the United States any moneys contained in the fund authorized herein. Income accruing from such securities, and from any other property accepted pursuant to section 1522 of this title, shall be deposited to the credit of the fund authorized herein, and shall be disbursed upon order of the Secretary of Commerce.

(Pub. L. 88-611, § 3, Oct. 2, 1964, 78 Stat. 991.)

#### CODIFICATION

Section was formerly classified to section 608c of Title 5 prior to the general revision and enactment of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees, by Pub. L. 89-554, § 1, Sept. 6, 1966, 80 Stat. 378.

### § 1525. Special studies; special compilations, lists, bulletins, or reports; clearinghouse for technical information; transcripts or copies; cost payments for special work; joint projects; cost apportionment, waiver

The Secretary of Commerce is authorized, upon the request of any person, firm, organization, or others, public or private, to make special studies on matters within the authority of the Department of Commerce; to prepare from its records special compilations, lists, bulletins, or reports; to perform the functions authorized by section 1152 of this title; and to furnish transcripts or copies of its studies, compilations, and other records; upon the payment of the actual or estimated cost of such special work.

In the case of nonprofit organizations, research organizations, or public organizations or agencies, the Secretary may engage in joint projects, or perform services, on matters of mutual interest, the cost of which shall be appor-

tioned equitably, as determined by the Secretary, who may, however, waive payment of any portion of such costs by others, when authorized to do so under regulations approved by the Office of Management and Budget.

(Pub. L. 91-412, § 1, Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 864; 1970 Reorg. Plan No. 2, § 102, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085.)

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested by law (including reorganization plan) in Bureau of the Budget or Director of Bureau of the Budget transferred to President by section 101 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970, eff. July 1, 1970, 35 F.R. 7959, 84 Stat. 2085, set out in the Appendix to Title 5, Government Organization and Employees. Section 102 of Reorg. Plan No. 2 of 1970 redesignated Bureau of the Budget as Office of Management and Budget.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1527a of this title.

### § 1526. Receipts for work or services; deposit in special accounts; availability for payment of costs, repayment or advances to appropriations or funds, refunds, credits to working capital funds; appropriation limitation of annual expenditures from accounts

All payments for work or services performed or to be performed under this Act shall be deposited in a separate account or accounts which may be used to pay directly the costs of such work or services, to repay or make advances to appropriations or funds which do or will initially bear all or part of such costs, or to refund excess sums when necessary: *Provided*, That said receipts may be credited to a working capital fund otherwise established by law, and used under the law governing said funds, if the fund is available for use by the agency of the Department of Commerce which is responsible for performing the work or services for which payment is received. Acts appropriating funds to the Department of Commerce may include provisions limiting annual expenditure from said account or accounts.

(Pub. L. 91-412, § 2, Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 864.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means Pub. L. 91-412, which enacted sections 1525 to 1527, amended section 1153, and repealed sections 189, 189a, 192, 192a, 1153a, and 1520 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1527a of this title.

### § 1527. Fees or charges for services or publications under existing law unaffected

Except as to those laws expressly repealed herein, nothing in this Act shall alter, amend, modify, or repeal any existing law prescribing fees or charges or authorizing the prescribing of fees or charges for services performed or for any publication furnished by the Department of Commerce, or any of its several bureaus or offices.

(Pub. L. 91-412, § 4, Sept. 25, 1970, 84 Stat. 865.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

This Act, referred to in text, means Pub. L. 91-412, which enacted sections 1525 to 1527, amended section 1153, and repealed sections 189, 189a, 192, 192a, 1153a, and 1520 of this title.

Laws expressly repealed herein, referred to in text, means amendment of section 1153 and repeal of sections 189, 189a, 192, 192a, 1153a, and 1520 of this title, as heretofore noted.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1527a of this title.

### § 1527a. Economics and Statistics Administration Revolving Fund

There is hereby established the Economics and Statistics Administration Revolving Fund which shall be available without fiscal year limitation. For initial capitalization, there is appropriated \$1,677,000 to the Fund: *Provided*, That the Secretary of Commerce is authorized to disseminate economic and statistical data products as authorized by sections 1525 to 1527 of this title and, notwithstanding section 4912 of this title, charge fees necessary to recover the full costs incurred in their production. Notwithstanding section 3302 of title 31, receipts received from these data dissemination activities shall be credited to this account as offsetting collections, to be available for carrying out these purposes without further appropriation.

(Pub. L. 103-317, title II, Aug. 26, 1994, 108 Stat. 1744.)

### § 1528. Transferred

## CODIFICATION

Section, act Feb. 28, 1920, ch. 91, § 500, 41 Stat. 499; 1939 Reorg. Plan No. II, § 6, eff. July 1, 1939, 4 F.R. 2732, 53 Stat. 1434; Aug. 6, 1981, Pub. L. 97-31, § 12(9), 95 Stat. 154, relating to a policy of development of water transportation, was transferred to section 142 of former Title 49, Transportation, and was repealed by Pub. L. 103-272, § 7(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1379, and reenacted by section 4(j)(6)(A) thereof as section 303a of Title 49, Transportation.

### § 1529. Relinquishment of legislative jurisdiction over certain lands

Notwithstanding any other law, the Secretary of Commerce, whenever the Secretary considers it desirable, may relinquish to a State, or to a Commonwealth, territory, or possession of the United States, all or part of the legislative jurisdiction of the United States over lands or interests under the Secretary's control in that State, Commonwealth, territory, or possession. Relinquishment of legislative jurisdiction under this section may be accomplished—

- (1) by filing with the Governor (or, if none exists, with the chief executive officer) of the State, Commonwealth, territory, or possession concerned a notice of relinquishment to take effect upon acceptance of the notice; or
- (2) as required by the laws of the State, Commonwealth, territory, or possession.

(Pub. L. 98-623, title IV, § 406, Nov. 8, 1984, 98 Stat. 3409.)

### § 1530. Awarding of contracts for performance of commercial activity by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration

The Administration may not award any contract for the performance of any "commercial activity", as defined by paragraph 6.a. of the Office of Management and Budget Circular Memorandum A-76, which is performed by Administration employees until at least 30 calendar days after the Administrator of the Administration has presented, in writing, to the President of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate, and the Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives, a full and complete description of such proposed contract, together with supporting documentation. Such documentation shall include—

- (1) a comparison of the cost of such activity as performed by employees of the Administration and the cost of such activity as performed under the proposed contract;
- (2) a comparison of the services performed by employees of the Administration and the services to be performed under the proposed contract; and
- (3) an assessment of the benefits to the Federal Government of proceeding with the proposed contract.

(Pub. L. 99-272, title VI, § 6083, Apr. 7, 1986, 100 Stat. 135; Pub. L. 103-437, § 5(b)(3), Nov. 2, 1994, 108 Stat. 4582.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Pub. L. 103-437 in introductory provisions substituted "Committee on Science, Space, and Technology" for "Committee on Science and Technology" before "of the House".

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## ABOLITION OF HOUSE COMMITTEE ON MERCHANT MARINE AND FISHERIES

Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of House of Representatives abolished and its jurisdiction transferred by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995. For treatment of references to Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries, see section 1(b)(3) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

### § 1531. Buying Power Maintenance accounts for International Trade Administration, Export Administration, and United States Travel and Tourism Administration

In order to maintain overseas program activity for the Department of Commerce provided for each fiscal year at the appropriated program levels, the Secretary may establish Buying Power Maintenance accounts for the International Trade Administration, the Export Administration, and the United States Travel and Tourism Administration. There are authorized to be appropriated for such accounts such sums as may be necessary to offset adverse fluctua-

tions in foreign currency exchange rates, or unbudgeted overseas wage and price changes. To eliminate substantial gains to the approved levels of overseas operations, the Secretary shall transfer to a Buying Power Maintenance account such amounts determined to be excessive to the needs of the approved level of overseas operations because of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or changes in unbudgeted overseas wages and prices, including unobligated balances associated with the overseas program. To offset adverse fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or unbudgeted overseas wage and price changes, the Secretary may transfer from a Buying Power Maintenance account such amounts determined to be necessary to maintain the approved level of overseas operations under an appropriation account. Funds transferred by the Secretary to or from a Buying Power Maintenance account to another account shall be merged with and be available for the same purpose, and for the same time period, as the funds in the account into which transferred. Any restriction contained in an appropriation Act or other provision of law limiting the amounts available for the Department of Commerce that may be obligated or expended shall be deemed to be adjusted to the extent necessary to offset the net effect of fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates or unbudgeted overseas wage and price changes in order to maintain approved levels.

(Pub. L. 100-202, §101(a) [title I, §108], Dec. 22, 1987, 101 Stat. 1329, 1329-7.)

**§ 1532. Telecommunications; electromagnetic radiation; research, analysis, dissemination of information; other functions of Secretary**

The Secretary of Commerce is authorized to—

(1) conduct research on all of the telecommunications sciences, including wave propagation and reception, the conditions which affect electromagnetic wave propagation and reception, electromagnetic noise and interference, radio system characteristics, operating techniques affecting the use of the electromagnetic spectrum, and methods for improving the use of the electromagnetic spectrum for telecommunications purposes;

(2) prepare and issue predictions of electromagnetic wave propagation conditions and warnings of disturbances in such conditions;

(3) investigate conditions which affect the transmission of radio waves from their source to a receiver and the compilation and distribution of information on such transmission of radio waves as a basis for choice of frequencies to be used in radio operations;

(4) conduct research and analysis in the general field of telecommunications sciences in support of assigned functions and in support of other Government agencies;

(5) investigate nonionizing electromagnetic radiation and its uses, as well as methods and procedures for measuring and assessing electromagnetic environments, for the purpose of developing and coordinating policies and procedures affecting Federal Government use of the electromagnetic spectrum for telecommunications purposes;

(6) compile, evaluate, publish, and otherwise disseminate general scientific and technical data resulting from the performance of the functions specified in this section or from other sources when such data are important to science, engineering, or industry, or to the general public, and are not available elsewhere; and

(7) undertake such other activities similar to those specified in this subsection as the Secretary of Commerce determines appropriate.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title V, §5112(b), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1430.)

**§ 1533. Commerce, Science, and Technology Fellowship Program**

There is established within the Department of Commerce a Commerce, Science, and Technology Fellowship Program with the stated purpose of providing a select group of employees of the executive branch of the Government with the opportunity of learning how the legislative branch and other parts of the executive branch function through work experiences of up to one year. The Secretary of Commerce shall report to the Congress within six months after August 23, 1988, on the Department of Commerce's plans for implementing such Program by March 31, 1989.

(Pub. L. 100-418, title V, §5163(d), Aug. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 1451.)

**§ 1534. Assessment of fees for access to environmental data**

**(a) Basis of assessment**

Except as otherwise provided in this section, the Secretary is authorized to assess fees, based on fair market value, for access to environmental data and information and products derived therefrom collected and/or archived by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

**(b) Eligible recipients; waiver of fees in cases of foreign governments and international organizations**

(1) The Secretary shall provide data, information, and products described in subsection (a) of this section to Federal, State, and local government agencies, to universities, and to other nonprofit institutions at the cost of reproduction and transmission, if such data, information, and products are to be used for research and not for commercial purposes.

(2) The Secretary shall waive the assessment of fees under subsection (a) of this section as necessary to continue to provide data, information, or products to foreign governments and international organizations on a basis of exchanging such data, information, and products or as otherwise provided by international agreement.

(3) The Secretary shall waive the assessment of fees authorized by subsection (a) of this section as necessary to continue to provide weather warnings, watches, and similar products and services essential to the mission of the National Oceanic Atmospheric<sup>1</sup> Administration.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be preceded by "and".

**(c) Publication of fee schedules in Federal Register; initial schedule effective for three-year period**

The initial schedule of any fees assessed under this section, and any subsequent amendment to such schedule, shall be published by the Secretary in the Federal Register at least 30 days before such fees will take effect. The initial schedule shall remain in effect without amendment for the three-year period beginning on the date that fees under the schedule take effect.

**(d) Effective date of assessments; progressive increments**

Any assessment of fees under this section by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data shall meet the following requirements:

(1) The initial schedule of fees established by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data shall remain in effect for the 3-year period beginning on the date that the fees under that schedule take effect.

(2) With respect to the first one-year period during which the initial fee schedule is in effect, fees shall be assessed at no more than one-third of the fair market value specified in subsection (a) of this section.

(3) With respect to the second one-year period during which the initial fee schedule is in effect, fees shall be assessed at not more than two-thirds of such fair market value.

(4) With respect to the third one-year period during which the initial fee schedule is in effect, and with respect to any period thereafter, fees shall be assessed at no more than the full amount of such fair market value.

**(e) Data archive center operations; availability of fees for expenses of centers**

Fees collected under this section by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data shall be available to the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for expenses incurred in the operation of its data archive centers.

**(f) Report to Congressional committees**

The Secretary shall, not later than 90 days after November 17, 1988, submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives a report which sets forth—

(1) any plan of the Secretary for assessing fees under this section by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data, including the methodology and bases by which the amount of such fees shall be determined, and the estimated revenues therefrom; and

(2) any plan of the Secretary for using revenues generated from such fees, as well as other resources, to improve the capability of the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service to collect, manage, process, archive, and disseminate the increasing amounts of data generated from satellites, radars, and other technologies.

**(g) Other assessment authorities unaffected**

The authority of the Secretary to assess fees under this section shall be in addition to, and shall not be construed to limit, the authority under any other law to assess fees relating to the environmental data activities of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, including the authority of the Secretary pursuant to section 1307 of title 44. Nothing in this section shall be construed to authorize the Secretary to assess fees for nautical and aeronautical products of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in addition to those fees authorized under section 1307 of title 44.

(Pub. L. 100-685, title IV, § 409, Nov. 17, 1988, 102 Stat. 4100; Pub. L. 101-508, title X, § 10201(a), Nov. 5, 1990, 104 Stat. 1388-392.)

## AMENDMENTS

1990—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(1), substituted “and information and products derived therefrom collected and/or archived by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration” for “data archived by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration”.

Subsec. (b)(1). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(2), inserted “, information, and products” after “provide data” and substituted “data, information, and products are” for “data is”.

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(3), inserted “, information, or products” after “provide data” and substituted “basis of exchanging such data, information, and products” for “data exchange basis”.

Subsec. (b)(3). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(4), added par. (3).

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(6), inserted “by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data” after “under this section” in introductory provisions.

Subsec. (d)(1). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(5), amended par. (1) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (1) read as follows: “No fees shall be assessed under this section until after September 30, 1989.”

Subsecs. (e), (f)(1). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(6), inserted “by the National Environmental Satellite, Data, and Information Service for archived data” after “under this section”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 101-508, § 10201(a)(7), inserted before period at end “, including the authority of the Secretary pursuant to section 1307 of title 44. Nothing in this section shall be construed to authorize the Secretary to assess fees for nautical and aeronautical products of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in addition to those fees authorized under section 1307 of title 44”.

## CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

## EFFECT OF AMENDMENTS

Section 10201(b) of Pub. L. 101-508 provided that:

“(1) The increase in revenues to the United States attributable to the amendments made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall not exceed—

“(A) \$2,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1991, 1992, and 1993; and

“(B) \$3,000,000 for each of the fiscal years 1994 and 1995.

“(2) Increases in revenues to the United States described in paragraph (1) shall be achieved by the Secretary of Commerce through fair and equitable in-

creases in fees for services offered by the various programs of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

“(3) The Secretary of Commerce shall notify the Congress of any changes in fee schedules under section 409 of the Act of November 17, 1988 (15 U.S.C. 1534), before such changes take effect.”

**§ 1535. Office of Space Commerce; report of activities**

Commencing in fiscal year 1992, and every fiscal year thereafter, the Secretary of Commerce shall submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives a report of the activities of the Office of Space Commerce, including planned programs and expenditures.

(Pub. L. 101-611, title I, §115(b), Nov. 16, 1990, 104 Stat. 3201.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 1536. Prohibition against fraudulent use of “Made in America” labels**

If it has been finally determined by a court or a Federal agency that any person intentionally affixed a label bearing a “Made in America” inscription, or an inscription with the same meaning, to any product sold in or shipped to the United States that is not made in the United States, that person shall be ineligible to receive any contract or subcontract from the Department of Commerce, pursuant to the debarment, suspension, and ineligibility procedures in subpart 9.4 of chapter 1 of title 48, Code of Federal Regulations.

(Pub. L. 102-245, title I, §111(b), Feb. 14, 1992, 106 Stat. 14.)

**§ 1537. Needs assessment for data management, archival, and distribution**

(1) Not later than 12 months after October 29, 1992, and at least biennially thereafter, the Secretary of Commerce shall complete an assessment of the adequacy of the environmental data and information systems of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. In conducting such an assessment, the Secretary shall take into consideration the need to—

(A) provide adequate capacity to manage, archive, and disseminate environmental data and information collected and processed, or expected to be collected and processed, by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and other appropriate departments and agencies;

(B) establish, develop, and maintain information bases, including necessary management systems, which will promote consistent, efficient, and compatible transfer and use of data;

(C) develop effective interfaces among the environmental data and information systems

of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration and other appropriate departments and agencies;

(D) develop and use nationally accepted formats and standards for data collected by various national and international sources; and

(E) integrate and interpret data from different sources to produce information that can be used by decisionmakers in developing policies that effectively respond to national and global environmental concerns.

(2) Not later than 12 months after October 29, 1992, and biennially thereafter, the Secretary of Commerce shall develop and submit to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation of the Senate and the Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of the House of Representatives a comprehensive plan, based on the assessment under paragraph (1), to modernize and improve the environmental data and information systems of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration. The report shall—

(A) set forth modernization and improvement objectives for the 10-year period beginning with the year in which the plan is submitted, including facility requirements and critical new technological components that would be necessary to meet the objectives set forth;

(B) propose specific agency programs and activities for implementing the plan;

(C) identify the data and information management, archival, and distribution responsibilities of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration with respect to other Federal departments and agencies and international organizations, including the role of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration with respect to large data systems like the Earth Observing System Data and Information System; and

(D) provide an implementation schedule and estimate funding levels necessary to achieve modernization and improvement objectives.

(Pub. L. 102-567, title I, §106(c), Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4274.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 1538. Notice of reprogramming**

**(a) In general**

The Secretary of Commerce shall provide notice to the Committee on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and Committee on Appropriations of the Senate and to the Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries, Committee on Science, Space, and Technology, and Committee on Appropriations of the House of Representatives, not less than 15 days before reprogramming funds available for a program, project, or activity of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in an amount greater than the lesser of \$250,000 or 5 percent of the total funding of such program, project, or activity if the reprogramming—

- (1) augments an existing program, project, or activity;
- (2) reduces by 5 percent or more (A) the funding for an existing program, project, or activity or (B) the numbers of personnel therefor as approved by Congress; or
- (3) results from any general savings from a reduction in personnel which would result in a change in an existing program, project, or activity.

**(b) Notice of reorganization**

The Secretary of Commerce shall provide notice to the Committees on Merchant Marine and Fisheries, Science, Space, and Technology, and Appropriations of the House of Representatives, and the Committees on Commerce, Science, and Transportation and Appropriations of the Senate not later than 15 days before any major reorganization of any program, project, or activity of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

(Pub. L. 102-567, title IV, §403, Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4291.)

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Science, Space, and Technology of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Science of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

ABOLITION OF HOUSE COMMITTEE ON MERCHANT MARINE AND FISHERIES

Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries of House of Representatives abolished and its jurisdiction transferred by House Resolution No. 6, One Hundred Fourth Congress, Jan. 4, 1995. For treatment of references to Committee on Merchant Marine and Fisheries, see section 1(b)(3) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

**§ 1539. Financial assistance**

**(a) Processing of applications**

Within 12 months after October 29, 1992, the Secretary of Commerce shall develop and, after notice and opportunity for public comment, promulgate regulations or guidelines to ensure that a completed application for a grant, contract, or other financial assistance under a nondiscretionary assistance program shall be processed and approved or disapproved within 75 days after submission of the application to the responsible program office of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.

**(b) Notification of applicant**

Not later than 14 days after the date on which the Secretary of Commerce receives an application for a contract, grant, or other financial assistance provided under a nondiscretionary assistance program administered by the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, the Secretary shall indicate in writing to the applicant whether or not the application is complete and, if not complete, shall specify the additional material that the applicant must provide to complete the application.

**(c) Exemption**

In the case of a program for which the recipient of a grant, contract, or other financial as-

sistance is specified by statute to be, or has customarily been, a State or an interstate fishery commission, such financial assistance may be provided by the Secretary to that recipient on a sole-source basis, notwithstanding any other provision of law.

**(d) “Nondiscretionary assistance program” defined**

In this section, the term “nondiscretionary assistance program” means any program for providing financial assistance—

- (1) under which the amount of funding for, and the intended recipient of, the financial assistance is specified by Congress; or
- (2) the recipients of which have customarily been a State or an interstate fishery commission.

(Pub. L. 102-567, title IV, §404, Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4292.)

**§ 1540. Cooperative agreements**

The Secretary of Commerce, acting through the Under Secretary of Commerce for Oceans and Atmosphere, may enter into cooperative agreements and other financial agreements with any nonprofit organization to—

- (1) aid and promote scientific and educational activities to foster public understanding of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration or its programs; and
- (2) solicit private donations for the support of such activities.

(Pub. L. 102-567, title IV, §406, Oct. 29, 1992, 106 Stat. 4293.)

**CHAPTER 41—CONSUMER CREDIT PROTECTION**

SUBCHAPTER I—CONSUMER CREDIT COST DISCLOSURE

PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

- Sec. 1601. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose.
  - (a) Informed use of credit.
  - (b) Terms of personal property leases.
- 1602. Definitions and rules of construction.
- 1603. Exempted transactions.
- 1604. Disclosure guidelines.
  - (a) Promulgation, contents, etc., of regulations.
  - (b) Model disclosure forms and clauses; publication, criteria, compliance, etc.
  - (c) Procedures applicable for adoption of model forms and clauses.
  - (d) Effective dates of regulations containing new disclosure requirements.
- 1605. Determination of finance charge.
  - (a) “Finance charge” defined.
  - (b) Life, accident, or health insurance premiums included in finance charge.
  - (c) Property damage and liability insurance premiums included in finance charge.
  - (d) Items exempted from computation of finance charge in all credit transactions.

TITLE 15—COMMERCE AND TRADE

<p>Sec.</p> <p>1606.</p> <p>1607.</p> <p>1608.</p> <p>1609.</p> <p>1610.</p> <p>1611.</p> <p>1612.</p> <p>1613.</p> <p>1614.</p> <p>1615.</p> <p>1631.</p> <p>1632.</p>	<p>(e) Items exempted from computation of finance charge in extensions of credit secured by an interest in real property.</p> <p>(f) Tolerances for accuracy.</p> <p>Determination of annual percentage rate.</p> <p>(a) "Annual percentage rate" defined.</p> <p>(b) Computation of rate of finance charges for balances within a specified range.</p> <p>(c) Allowable tolerances for purposes of compliance with disclosure requirements.</p> <p>(d) Use of rate tables or charts having allowable variance from determined rates.</p> <p>(e) Authorization of tolerances in determining annual percentage rates.</p> <p>Administrative enforcement.</p> <p>(a) Enforcing agencies.</p> <p>(b) Violations of this subchapter deemed violations of pre-existing statutory requirements; additional agency powers.</p> <p>(c) Federal Trade Commission as overall enforcing agency.</p> <p>(d) Rules and regulations.</p> <p>(e) Adjustment of finance charges; procedures applicable, coverage, criteria, etc.</p> <p>Views of other agencies.</p> <p>Repealed.</p> <p>Effect on other laws.</p> <p>(a) Inconsistent provisions; procedures applicable for determination.</p> <p>(b) State credit charge statutes.</p> <p>(c) Disclosure as evidence.</p> <p>(d) Contract or other obligations under State or Federal law.</p> <p>(e) Certain credit and charge card application and solicitation disclosure provisions.</p> <p>Criminal liability for willful and knowing violation.</p> <p>Effect on government agencies.</p> <p>(a) Consultation requirements respecting compliance of credit instruments issued to participating creditor.</p> <p>(b) Inapplicability of Federal civil or criminal penalties to Federal, State, and local agencies.</p> <p>(c) Inapplicability of Federal civil or criminal penalties to participating creditor where violating instrument issued by United States.</p> <p>(d) Applicability of State penalties to violations by participating creditor.</p> <p>Annual reports to Congress by Board.</p> <p>Repealed.</p> <p>Prohibition on use of "Rule of 78's" in connection with mortgage refinancings and other consumer loans.</p> <p>(a) Prompt refund of unearned interest required.</p> <p>(b) Use of "Rule of 78's" prohibited.</p> <p>(c) Statement of prepayment amount.</p> <p>(d) Definitions.</p> <p>PART B—CREDIT TRANSACTIONS</p> <p>Disclosure requirements.</p> <p>(a) Duty of creditor or lessor respecting one or more than one obligor.</p> <p>(b) Creditor or lessor required to make disclosure.</p> <p>(c) Estimates as satisfying statutory requirements; basis of disclosure for per diem interest.</p> <p>(d) Tolerances for numerical disclosures.</p> <p>Form of disclosure; additional information.</p>	<p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Information clearly and conspicuously disclosed; "annual percentage rate" and "finance charge"; order of disclosures and use of different terminology.</p> <p>(b) Optional information by creditor or lessor.</p> <p>(c) Tabular format required for certain disclosures under section 1637(c).</p> <p>1633. Exemption for State-regulated transactions.</p> <p>1634. Effect of subsequent occurrence.</p> <p>1635. Right of rescission as to certain transactions.</p> <p>(a) Disclosure of obligor's right to rescind.</p> <p>(b) Return of money or property following rescission.</p> <p>(c) Rebuttable presumption of delivery of required disclosures.</p> <p>(d) Modification and waiver of rights.</p> <p>(e) Exempted transactions; reapplication of provisions.</p> <p>(f) Time limit for exercise of right.</p> <p>(g) Additional relief.</p> <p>(h) Limitation on rescission.</p> <p>(i) Rescission rights in foreclosure.</p> <p>Repealed.</p> <p>1636. Open end consumer credit plans.</p> <p>1637.</p> <p>(a) Required disclosures by creditor.</p> <p>(b) Statement required with each billing cycle.</p> <p>(c) Disclosure in credit and charge card applications and solicitations.</p> <p>(d) Disclosure prior to renewal.</p> <p>(e) Other rules for disclosures under subsections (c) and (d).</p> <p>(f) Disclosure of range of certain fees which vary by State allowed.</p> <p>(g) Insurance in connection with certain open end credit card plans.</p> <p>1637a. Disclosure requirements for open end consumer credit plans secured by consumer's principal dwelling.</p> <p>(a) Application disclosures.</p> <p>(b) Time and form of disclosures.</p> <p>(c) Third party applications.</p> <p>(d) "Principal dwelling" defined.</p> <p>(e) Pamphlet.</p> <p>1638. Transactions other than under an open end credit plan.</p> <p>(a) Required disclosures by creditor.</p> <p>(b) Form and timing of disclosures; residential mortgage transaction requirements.</p> <p>(c) Timing of disclosures on unsolicited mailed or telephone purchase orders or loan requests.</p> <p>(d) Timing of disclosure in cases of an addition of a deferred payment price to an existing outstanding balance.</p> <p>1639. Requirements for certain mortgages.</p> <p>(a) Disclosures.</p> <p>(b) Time of disclosures.</p> <p>(c) No prepayment penalty.</p> <p>(d) Limitations after default.</p> <p>(e) No balloon payments.</p> <p>(f) No negative amortization.</p> <p>(g) No prepaid payments.</p> <p>(h) Prohibition on extending credit without regard to payment ability of consumer.</p> <p>(i) Requirements for payments under home improvement contracts.</p> <p>(j) Consequence of failure to comply.</p> <p>(k) "Affiliate" defined.</p> <p>(l) Discretionary regulatory authority of Board.</p> <p>1640. Civil liability.</p> <p>(a) Individual or class action for damages; amount of award; factors determining amount of award.</p>
---	--	---

TITLE 15—COMMERCE AND TRADE

Sec.		Sec.	
	(b) Correction of errors.	1662.	Advertising of down payments and installments.
	(c) Unintentional violations; bona fide errors.	1663.	Advertising of open end credit plans.
	(d) Liability in transaction or lease involving multiple obligors.	1664.	Advertising of credit other than open end plans.
	(e) Jurisdiction of courts; limitations on actions; State attorney general enforcement.		(a) Exclusion of open end credit plans.
	(f) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or with interpretation or approval of duly authorized official or employee of Federal Reserve System.		(b) Advertisements of residential real estate.
	(g) Recovery for multiple failures to disclose.		(c) Rate of finance charge expressed as annual percentage rate.
	(h) Offset from amount owed to creditor or assignee; rights of defaulting consumer.		(d) Requisite disclosures in advertisement.
	(i) Class action moratorium.	1665.	Nonliability of advertising media.
1641.	Liability of assignees.	1665a.	Use of annual percentage rate in oral disclosures; exceptions.
	(a) Prerequisites.	1665b.	Advertising of open end consumer credit plans secured by consumer's principal dwelling.
	(b) Proof of compliance with statutory provisions.		(a) In general.
	(c) Right of rescission by consumer unaffected.		(b) Tax deductibility.
	(d) Rights upon assignment of certain mortgages.		(c) Certain terms prohibited.
	(e) Liability of assignee for consumer credit transactions secured by real property.		(d) Discounted initial rate.
	(f) Treatment of servicer.		(e) Balloon payment.
1642.	Issuance of credit cards.		(f) "Balloon payment" defined.
1643.	Liability of holder of credit card.		
	(a) Limits on liability.		PART D—CREDIT BILLING
	(b) Burden of proof.	1666.	Correction of billing errors.
	(c) Liability imposed by other laws or by agreement with issuer.		(a) Written notice by obligor to creditor; time for and contents of notice; procedure upon receipt of notice by creditor.
	(d) Exclusiveness of liability.		(b) Billing error.
1644.	Fraudulent use of credit cards; penalties.		(c) Action by creditor to collect amount or any part thereof regarded by obligor to be a billing error.
	(a) Use, attempt or conspiracy to use card in transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce.		(d) Restricting or closing by creditor of account regarded by obligor to contain a billing error.
	(b) Transporting, attempting or conspiring to transport card in interstate commerce.		(e) Effect of noncompliance with requirements by creditor.
	(c) Use of interstate commerce to sell or transport card.	1666a.	Regulation of credit reports.
	(d) Receipt, concealment, etc., of goods obtained by use of card.		(a) Reports by creditor on obligor's failure to pay amount regarded as billing error.
	(e) Receipt, concealment, etc., of tickets for interstate or foreign transportation obtained by use of card.		(b) Reports by creditor on delinquent amounts in dispute; notification of obligor of parties notified of delinquency.
	(f) Furnishing of money, etc., through use of card.		(c) Reports by creditor of subsequent resolution of delinquent amounts.
1645.	Business credit cards; limits on liability of employees.	1666b.	Length of billing period in credit statement for imposition of finance charge; effect of failure of timely mailing or delivery of statement.
1646.	Dissemination of annual percentage rates; implementation, etc.		(a) Additional finance charge.
	(a) Annual percentage rates.	1666c.	Prompt crediting of payments; imposition of finance charge.
	(b) Credit card price and availability information.	1666d.	Treatment of credit balances.
	(c) Implementation.	1666e.	Notification of credit card issuer by seller of return of goods, etc., by obligor; credit for account of obligor.
1647.	Home equity plans.	1666f.	Inducements to cardholders by sellers of cash discounts for payments by cash, check or similar means; credit card surcharge prohibition; finance charge for sales transactions involving cash discounts.
	(a) Index requirement.		(a) Cash discounts.
	(b) Grounds for acceleration of outstanding balance.		(b) Finance charge.
	(c) Change in terms.	1666g.	Tie-in services prohibited for issuance of credit card.
	(d) Terms changed after application.	1666h.	Offset of cardholder's indebtedness by issuer of credit card with funds deposited with issuer by cardholder; remedies of creditors under State law not affected.
	(e) Additional requirements relating to refunds and imposition of non-refundable fees.		(a) Offset against consumer's funds.
1648.	Reverse mortgages.		(b) Attachments and levies.
	(a) In general.	1666i.	Assertion by cardholder against card issuer of claims and defenses arising out of credit card transaction; prerequisites; limitation on amount of claims or defenses.
	(b) Projected total cost.		
1649.	Certain limitations on liability.		
	(a) Limitations on liability.		
	(b) Exceptions.		
	PART C—CREDIT ADVERTISING		
1661.	Catalogs and multiple-page advertisements.		

TITLE 15—COMMERCE AND TRADE

<p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Claims and defenses assertible. (b) Amount of claims and defenses assertible.</p> <p>1666j. Applicability of State laws. (a) Consistency of provisions (b) Exemptions by Board from credit billing requirements. (c) Finance charge or other charge for credit for sales transactions involving cash discounts.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">PART E—CONSUMER LEASES</p> <p>1667. Definitions. 1667a. Consumer lease disclosures. 1667b. Lessee's liability on expiration or termination of lease. (a) Estimated residual value of property as basis; presumptions; action by lessor for excess liability; mutually agreeable final adjustment. (b) Penalties and charges for delinquency, default, or early termination. (c) Independent professional appraisal of residual value of property at termination of lease; finality. 1667c. Consumer lease advertising; liability of advertising media. (a) Contents of lease advertisements. (b) Radio advertisements. (c) Liability of advertising media. 1667d. Civil liability of lessors. (a) Grounds for maintenance of action. (b) Additional grounds for maintenance of action; "creditor" defined. (c) Jurisdiction of courts; time limitation. 1667e. Applicability of State laws; exemptions by Board from leasing requirements.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER II—RESTRICTIONS ON GARNISHMENT</p> <p>1671. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose. (a) Disadvantages of garnishment. (b) Necessity for regulation.</p> <p>1672. Definitions. 1673. Restriction on garnishment. (a) Maximum allowable garnishment. (b) Exceptions. (c) Execution or enforcement of garnishment order or process prohibited.</p> <p>1674. Restriction on discharge from employment by reason of garnishment. (a) Termination of employment. (b) Penalties.</p> <p>1675. Exemption for State-regulated garnishments. 1676. Enforcement by Secretary of Labor. 1677. Effect on State laws.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER III—CREDIT REPORTING AGENCIES</p> <p>1681. Congressional findings and statement of purpose. (a) Accuracy and fairness of credit reporting. (b) Reasonable procedures.</p> <p>1681a. Definitions; rules of construction. 1681b. Permissible purposes of consumer reports. 1681c. Reporting of obsolete information prohibited. (a) Prohibited items. (b) Exempted cases.</p> <p>1681d. Disclosure of investigative consumer reports. (a) Disclosure of fact of preparation. (b) Disclosure on request of nature and scope of investigation. (c) Limitation on liability upon showing of reasonable procedures for compliance with provisions.</p> <p>1681e. Compliance procedures.</p>	<p>Sec.</p> <p>(a) Identity and purposes of credit users. (b) Accuracy of report.</p> <p>1681f. Disclosures to governmental agencies. 1681g. Disclosures to consumers. (a) Information on file; sources; report recipients. (b) Exempt information.</p> <p>1681h. Conditions of disclosure to consumers. (a) Times and notice. (b) Identification of consumer. (c) Trained personnel. (d) Persons accompanying consumer. (e) Limitation of liability.</p> <p>1681i. Procedure in case of disputed accuracy. (a) Dispute; reinvestigation. (b) Statement of dispute. (c) Notification of consumer dispute in subsequent consumer reports. (d) Notification of deletion of disputed information.</p> <p>1681j. Charges for disclosures. 1681k. Public record information for employment purposes. 1681l. Restrictions on investigative consumer reports. 1681m. Requirements on users of consumer reports. (a) Adverse action based on reports of consumer reporting agencies. (b) Adverse action based on reports of persons other than consumer reporting agencies. (c) Reasonable procedures to assure compliance.</p> <p>1681n. Civil liability for willful noncompliance. 1681o. Civil liability for negligent noncompliance. 1681p. Jurisdiction of courts; limitation of actions. 1681q. Obtaining information under false pretenses. 1681r. Unauthorized disclosures by officers or employees.</p> <p>1681s. Administrative enforcement. (a) Federal Trade Commission; powers. (b) Other administrative bodies. (c) Enforcement under other authority.</p> <p>1681s-1. Information on overdue child support obligations.</p> <p>1681t. Relation to State laws. 1681u. Disclosures to FBI for counterintelligence purposes. (a) Identity of financial institutions. (b) Identifying information. (c) Court order for disclosure of consumer reports. (d) Confidentiality. (e) Payment of fees. (f) Limit on dissemination. (g) Rules of construction. (h) Reports to Congress. (i) Damages. (j) Disciplinary actions for violations. (k) Good-faith exception. (l) Limitation of remedies. (m) Injunctive relief.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">SUBCHAPTER IV—EQUAL CREDIT OPPORTUNITY</p> <p>1691. Scope of prohibition. (a) Activities constituting discrimination. (b) Activities not constituting discrimination. (c) Additional activities not constituting discrimination. (d) Reason for adverse action; procedure applicable; "adverse action" defined. (e) Appraisals; copies of reports to applicants; costs.</p> <p>1691a. Definitions; rules of construction. 1691b. Promulgation of regulations by Board; establishment of Consumer Advisory Council by Board; duties, membership, etc., of Council.</p>
---	---

TITLE 15—COMMERCE AND TRADE

Sec.		Sec.	
	(a) Regulations.	1692b.	Acquisition of location information.
	(b) Consumer Advisory Council.	1692c.	Communication in connection with debt collection.
1691c.	Administrative enforcement.		(a) Communication with the consumer generally.
	(a) Enforcing agencies.		(b) Communication with third parties.
	(b) Violations of subchapter deemed violations of pre-existing statutory requirements; additional agency powers.		(c) Ceasing communication.
	(c) Overall enforcement authority of Federal Trade Commission.	1692d.	Harassment or abuse.
	(d) Rules and regulations by enforcing agencies.	1692e.	False or misleading representations.
1691d.	Applicability of other laws.	1692f.	Unfair practices.
	(a) Requests for signature of husband and wife for creation of valid lien, etc.	1692g.	Validation of debts.
	(b) State property laws affecting creditworthiness.		(a) Notice of debt; contents.
	(c) State laws prohibiting separate extension of consumer credit to husband and wife.		(b) Disputed debts.
	(d) Combining credit accounts of husband and wife with same creditor to determine permissible finance charges or loan ceilings under Federal or State laws.	1692h.	Multiple debts.
	(e) Election of remedies under subchapter or State law; nature of relief determining applicability.	1692i.	Legal actions by debt collectors.
	(f) Compliance with inconsistent State laws; determination of inconsistency.		(a) Venue.
	(g) Exemption by regulation of credit transactions covered by State law; failure to comply with State law.		(b) Authorization of actions.
1691e.	Civil liability.	1692j.	Furnishing certain deceptive forms.
	(a) Individual or class action for actual damages.	1692k.	Civil liability.
	(b) Recovery of punitive damages in individual and class action for actual damages; exemptions; maximum amount of punitive damages in individual actions; limitation on total recovery in class actions; factors determining amount of award.		(a) Amount of damages.
	(c) Action for equitable and declaratory relief.		(b) Factors considered by court.
	(d) Recovery of costs and attorney fees.		(c) Intent.
	(e) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or interpretation or approval by an official or employee of Federal Reserve System duly authorized by Board.		(d) Jurisdiction.
	(f) Jurisdiction of courts; time for maintenance of action; exceptions.		(e) Advisory opinions of Commission.
	(g) Request by responsible enforcement agency to Attorney General for civil action.	1692l.	Administrative enforcement.
	(h) Authority for Attorney General to bring civil action; jurisdiction.		(a) Federal Trade Commission.
	(i) Recovery under both subchapter and fair housing enforcement provisions prohibited for violation based on same transaction.		(b) Applicable provisions of law.
	(j) Discovery of creditor's granting standards.		(c) Agency powers.
	(k) Notice to HUD of violations.		(d) Rules and regulations.
1691f.	Annual reports to Congress; contents.	1692m.	Reports to Congress by the Commission; views of other Federal agencies.
	SUBCHAPTER V—DEBT COLLECTION PRACTICES	1692n.	Relation to State laws.
1692.	Congressional findings and declaration of purpose.	1692o.	Exemption for State regulation.
	(a) Abusive practices.		SUBCHAPTER VI—ELECTRONIC FUND TRANSFERS
	(b) Inadequacy of laws.	1693.	Congressional findings and declaration of purpose.
	(c) Available non-abusive collection methods.		(a) Rights and liabilities undefined.
	(d) Interstate commerce.		(b) Purposes.
	(e) Purposes.	1693a.	Definitions.
1692a.	Definitions.	1693b.	Regulations.
			(a) Prescription by Board.
			(b) Issuance of model clauses.
			(c) Criteria; modification of requirements.
			(d) Availability of disclosures, protections, responsibilities, and remedies created by this subchapter.
		1693c.	Terms and conditions of transfers.
			(a) Disclosures; time; form; contents.
			(b) Notification of changes to consumer.
			(c) Time for disclosures respecting accounts accessible prior to effective date of this subchapter.
		1693d.	Documentation of transfers.
			(a) Availability of written documentation to consumer; contents.
			(b) Notice of credit to consumer.
			(c) Periodic statement; contents.
			(d) Consumer passbook accounts.
			(e) Accounts other than passbook accounts.
			(f) Documentation as evidence.
		1693e.	Preauthorized transfers.
		1693f.	Error resolution.
			(a) Notification to financial institution of error.
			(b) Correction of error; interest.
			(c) Provisional recredit of consumer's account.
			(d) Absence of error; finding; explanation.
			(e) Treble damages.
			(f) Acts constituting error.
		1693g.	Consumer liability.
			(a) Unauthorized electronic fund transfers; limit.

- Sec.
- (b) Burden of proof.
  - (c) Determination of limitation on liability.
  - (d) Restriction on liability.
  - (e) Scope of liability.
- 1693h. Liability of financial institutions.
- (a) Action or failure to act proximately causing damages.
  - (b) Acts of God and technical malfunctions.
  - (c) Intent.
- 1693i. Issuance of cards or other means of access.
- (a) Prohibition; proper issuance.
  - (b) Exceptions.
  - (c) Validation.
- 1693j. Suspension of obligations.
- 1693k. Compulsory use of electronic fund transfers.
- 1693l. Waiver of rights.
- 1693m. Civil liability.
- (a) Individual or class action for damages; amount of award.
  - (b) Factors determining amount of award.
  - (c) Unintentional violations; bona fide error.
  - (d) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or approval of duly authorized official or employee of Federal Reserve System.
  - (e) Notification to consumer prior to action; adjustment of consumer's account.
  - (f) Action in bad faith or for harassment; attorney's fees.
  - (g) Jurisdiction of courts; time for maintenance of action.
- 1693n. Criminal liability.
- (a) Violations respecting giving of false or inaccurate information, failure to provide information, and failure to comply with provisions of this subchapter.
  - (b) Violations affecting interstate or foreign commerce.
  - (c) "Debit instrument" defined.
- 1693o. Administrative enforcement.
- (a) Enforcing agencies.
  - (b) Violations of subchapter deemed violations of pre-existing statutory requirements; additional powers.
  - (c) Overall enforcement authority of Federal Trade Commission.
- 1693p. Reports to Congress.
- 1693q. Relation to State laws.
- 1693r. Exemption for State regulation.

## CHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This chapter is referred to in title 11 section 523.

## SUBCHAPTER I—CONSUMER CREDIT COST DISCLOSURE

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in section 5721 of this title; title 12 sections 2199, 2610, 3806, 4803; title 20 section 1083.

## PART A—GENERAL PROVISIONS

## § 1601. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose

## (a) Informed use of credit

The Congress finds that economic stabilization would be enhanced and the competition among the various financial institutions and other firms engaged in the extension of con-

sumer credit would be strengthened by the informed use of credit. The informed use of credit results from an awareness of the cost thereof by consumers. It is the purpose of this subchapter to assure a meaningful disclosure of credit terms so that the consumer will be able to compare more readily the various credit terms available to him and avoid the uninformed use of credit, and to protect the consumer against inaccurate and unfair credit billing and credit card practices.

## (b) Terms of personal property leases

The Congress also finds that there has been a recent trend toward leasing automobiles and other durable goods for consumer use as an alternative to installment credit sales and that these leases have been offered without adequate cost disclosures. It is the purpose of this subchapter to assure a meaningful disclosure of the terms of leases of personal property for personal, family, or household purposes so as to enable the lessee to compare more readily the various lease terms available to him, limit balloon payments in consumer leasing, enable comparison of lease terms with credit terms where appropriate, and to assure meaningful and accurate disclosures of lease terms in advertisements.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §102, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 146; Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §302, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1511; Pub. L. 94-240, §2, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 257.)

## AMENDMENTS

1976—Pub. L. 94-240 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsec. (b).

1974—Pub. L. 93-495 inserted provisions expanding purposes of subchapter to include protection of consumer against inaccurate and unfair credit billing and credit card practices.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-240 effective on expiration of one year after Mar. 23, 1976, see section 6 of Pub. L. 94-240, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1667 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 93-495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 504(a) of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that this part is effective May 29, 1968.

## SHORT TITLE OF 1995 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 104-29, §1, Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 271, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 1649 of this title, amending sections 1605, 1631, 1635, 1640, and 1641 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 1605 of this title] may be cited as the 'Truth in Lending Act Amendments of 1995'."

Pub. L. 104-12, §1, May 18, 1995, 109 Stat. 161, provided that: "This Act [amending section 1640 of this title] may be cited as the 'Truth in Lending Class Action Relief Act of 1995'."

## SHORT TITLE OF 1994 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §151, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2190, provided that: "This subtitle [subtitle B (§§151-158) of title I of Pub. L. 103-325, enacting sections 1639 and 1648 of this title, amending sections 1602, 1604,

1610, 1640, 1641, and 1647 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 1602 of this title] may be cited as the 'Home Ownership and Equity Protection Act of 1994'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 102-537, §1, Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3531, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 1681s-1 of this title, amending section 1681a of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1681a of this title] may be cited as the 'Ted Weiss Child Support Enforcement Act of 1992'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1988 AMENDMENTS

Pub. L. 100-709, §1, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4725, provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 1637a, 1647, and 1665b of this title, amending sections 1632 and 1637 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under section 1637a of this title] may be cited as the 'Home Equity Loan Consumer Protection Act of 1988'."

Pub. L. 100-583, §1, Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2960, provided that: "This Act [amending sections 1610, 1632, 1637, 1640, and 1646 of this title and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1637 of this title] may be cited as the 'Fair Credit and Charge Card Disclosure Act of 1988'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 97-25, §1, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 144, provided: "That this Act [amending sections 1602 and 1666f of this title, section 29 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and sections 205 and 212 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare; enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and sections 1602 and 1666f of this title; and amending provisions set out as notes under sections 1602 and 1666f of this title] may be cited as the 'Cash Discount Act'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §601, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 168, provided that: "This title [enacting section 1646 of this title, amending sections 57a, 1602 to 1607, 1610, 1612, 1613, 1631, 1632, 1635, 1637, 1638, 1640, 1641, 1643, 1663, 1664, 1665a, 1666, 1666d, 1667d, and 1691f of this title, repealing sections 1614, 1636, and 1639 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under sections 1602 and 1607 of this title] may be cited as the 'Truth in Lending Simplification and Reform Act'."

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1976 AMENDMENTS

Section 1 of Pub. L. 94-240 provided that: "This Act [enacting sections 1667 to 1667e of this title, amending this section and section 1640 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1667 of this title] may be cited as the 'Consumer Leasing Act of 1976'."

Pub. L. 94-239, §1(a), Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 251, provided that: "This Act [enacting section 1691f of this title, amending this section and sections 1691b, 1691c, 1691d, 1691e of this title, repealing section 1609 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, and repealing provision set out as a note under this section] may be cited as the 'Equal Credit Opportunity Act Amendments of 1976'."

Section 1(c) of Pub. L. 94-239 repealed section 501 of Pub. L. 93-495, title V, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1521, which provided that subchapter IV of this chapter and notes set out under section 1691 were to be cited as the "Equal Credit Opportunity Act".

#### SHORT TITLE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Section 301 of title III of Pub. L. 93-495 provided that: "This title [enacting sections 1666 to 1666j of this title, amending this section and sections 1602, 1610, 1631, 1632, and 1637 of this title, and enacting provision set out as a note under section 1666 of this title] may be cited as the 'Fair Credit Billing Act'."

#### SHORT TITLE

Section 1 of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter, sections 891 to 896 of Title 18,

Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 1631 and 1671 of this title, and section 891 of Title 18] may be cited as the 'Consumer Credit Protection Act'."

Section 101 of title I of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] may be cited as the 'Truth in Lending Act'."

Section 601 of title VI of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1128, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter III of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Fair Credit Reporting Act'."

Section 709 of title VII of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by section 1(b) of title I of Pub. L. 94-239, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 251, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter IV of this chapter and notes set out under section 1691 of this title] may be cited as the 'Equal Credit Opportunity Act'."

Section 801 of title VIII of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 874, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter V of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Fair Debt Collection Practices Act'."

Section 901 of title IX of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3728, provided that: "This title [enacting subchapter VI of this chapter] may be cited as the 'Electronic Fund Transfer Act'."

#### SEVERABILITY

Section 501 of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: "If a provision enacted by this Act [see Short Title note above], is held invalid, all valid provisions that are severable from the invalid provision remain in effect. If a provision enacted by this Act is held invalid in one or more of its applications, the provision remains in effect in all valid applications that are severable from the invalid application or applications."

#### FEDERAL RESERVE STUDY OF HOME EQUITY LENDING AND APPROPRIATE INTEREST RATE INDEX

Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §157, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2197, provided that: "During the period beginning 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994] and ending 2 years after that date of enactment, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall conduct a study and submit to the Congress a report, including recommendations for any appropriate legislation, regarding—

"(1) whether a consumer engaging in an open end credit transaction (as defined in section 103 of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. 1602]) secured by the consumer's principal dwelling is provided adequate protections under Federal law, including section 127A of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. 1637a]; and

"(2) whether a more appropriate interest rate index exists for purposes of subparagraph (A) of section 103(aa)(1) of the Truth in Lending Act (as added by section 152(a) of this Act [15 U.S.C. 1602(aa)(1)(A)]) than the yield on Treasury securities referred to in that subparagraph."

#### HEARINGS ON HOME EQUITY LENDING

Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §158, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2197, provided that:

"(a) HEARINGS.—Not less than once during the 3-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994], and regularly thereafter, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System, in consultation with the Consumer Advisory Council of the Board, shall conduct a public hearing to examine the home equity loan market and the adequacy of existing regulatory and legislative provisions and the provisions of this subtitle [see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note above] in protecting the interests of consumers, and low-income consumers in particular.

"(b) PARTICIPATION.—In conducting hearings required by subsection (a), the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall solicit participation from

consumers, representatives of consumers, lenders, and other interested parties.”

STUDY BY FEDERAL RESERVE BOARD OF GOVERNORS COVERING EFFECT OF CHARGE CARD TRANSACTIONS UPON CARD ISSUERS, MERCHANTS, AND CONSUMERS

Pub. L. 97-25, title II, §202, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 145, directed Board of Governors of Federal Reserve System, not later than 2 years after July 27, 1981, to prepare a study and submit its findings to Congress on the effect of charge card transactions upon card issuers, merchants, and consumers.

NATIONAL COMMISSION ON CONSUMER FINANCE

Title IV, §§401-407, of Pub. L. 90-321, as amended by Pub. L. 91-344, July 20, 1970, 84 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 92-321, June 30, 1972, 86 Stat. 382, established a bipartisan National Commission on Consumer Finance to study the functioning and structure of the consumer finance industry as well as consumer credit transactions generally and to report on (1) the adequacy of existing arrangements to provide consumer credit at reasonable rates, (2) the adequacy of existing regulatory mechanisms to protect the public from unfair practices and insure the informed use of consumer credit, and (3) the desirability of Federal chartering of consumer finance companies or other Federal regulatory measures. The Commission was to submit a final report by Dec. 31, 1972, and was to cease to exist after submission of such report.

INFERENCE OF LEGISLATIVE INTENT IN SECTION CAPTIONS AND CATCHLINES

Section 502 of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: “Captions and catchlines are intended solely as aids to convenient reference, and no inference as to the legislative intent with respect to any provision enacted by this Act [enacting this chapter, section 891 to 896 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and provisions set out as notes under this section, sections 1631 and 1671 of this title, and section 891 of Title 18] may be drawn from them.”

GRAMMATICAL USAGES

Section 503 of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: “In this Act [enacting this chapter, sections 891 to 896 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and provisions set out as notes under sections 1601, 1631 and 1671 of this title, and section 891 of Title 18]:

- “(1) The word ‘may’ is used to indicate that an action either is authorized or is permitted.
- “(2) The word ‘shall’ is used to indicate that an action is both authorized and required.
- “(3) The phrase ‘may not’ is used to indicate that an action is both unauthorized and forbidden.
- “(4) Rules of law are stated in the indicative mood.”

**§ 1602. Definitions and rules of construction**

(a) The definitions and rules of construction set forth in this section are applicable for the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) The term “Board” refers to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(c) The term “organization” means a corporation, government or governmental subdivision or agency, trust, estate, partnership, cooperative, or association.

(d) The term “person” means a natural person or an organization.

(e) The term “credit” means the right granted by a creditor to a debtor to defer payment of debt or to incur debt and defer its payment.

(f) The term “creditor” refers only to a person who both (1) regularly extends, whether in connection with loans, sales of property or services,

or otherwise, consumer credit which is payable by agreement in more than four installments or for which the payment of a finance charge is or may be required, and (2) is the person to whom the debt arising from the consumer credit transaction is initially payable on the face of the evidence of indebtedness or, if there is no such evidence of indebtedness, by agreement. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, in the case of an open-end credit plan involving a credit card, the card issuer and any person who honors the credit card and offers a discount which is a finance charge are creditors. For the purpose of the requirements imposed under part D of this subchapter and sections 1637(a)(5), 1637(a)(6), 1637(a)(7), 1637(b)(1), 1637(b)(2), 1637(b)(3), 1637(b)(8), and 1637(b)(10) of this title, the term “creditor” shall also include card issuers whether or not the amount due is payable by agreement in more than four installments or the payment of a finance charge is or may be required, and the Board shall, by regulation, apply these requirements to such card issuers, to the extent appropriate, even though the requirements are by their terms applicable only to creditors offering open-end credit plans. Any person who originates 2 or more mortgages referred to in subsection (aa) of this section in any 12-month period or any person who originates 1 or more such mortgages through a mortgage broker shall be considered to be a creditor for purposes of this subchapter.

(g) The term “credit sale” refers to any sale in which the seller is a creditor. The term includes any contract in the form of a bailment or lease if the bailee or lessee contracts to pay as compensation for use a sum substantially equivalent to or in excess of the aggregate value of the property and services involved and it is agreed that the bailee or lessee will become, or for no other or a nominal consideration has the option to become, the owner of the property upon full compliance with his obligations under the contract.

(h) The adjective “consumer”, used with reference to a credit transaction, characterizes the transaction as one in which the party to whom credit is offered or extended is a natural person, and the money, property, or services which are the subject of the transaction are primarily for personal, family, or household purposes.

(i) The term “open end credit plan” means a plan under which the creditor reasonably contemplates repeated transactions, which prescribes the terms of such transactions, and which provides for a finance charge which may be computed from time to time on the outstanding unpaid balance. A credit plan which is an open end credit plan within the meaning of the preceding sentence is an open end credit plan even if credit information is verified from time to time.

(j) The term “adequate notice,” as used in section 1643 of this title, means a printed notice to a cardholder which sets forth the pertinent facts clearly and conspicuously so that a person against whom it is to operate could reasonably be expected to have noticed it and understood its meaning. Such notice may be given to a cardholder by printing the notice on any credit card, or on each periodic statement of account,

issued to the cardholder, or by any other means reasonably assuring the receipt thereof by the cardholder.

(k) The term “credit card” means any card, plate, coupon book or other credit device existing for the purpose of obtaining money, property, labor, or services on credit.

(l) The term “accepted credit card” means any credit card which the cardholder has requested and received or has signed or has used, or authorized another to use, for the purpose of obtaining money, property, labor, or services on credit.

(m) The term “cardholder” means any person to whom a credit card is issued or any person who has agreed with the card issuer to pay obligations arising from the issuance of a credit card to another person.

(n) The term “card issuer” means any person who issues a credit card, or the agent of such person with respect to such card.

(o) The term “unauthorized use,” as used in section 1643 of this title, means a use of a credit card by a person other than the cardholder who does not have actual, implied, or apparent authority for such use and from which the cardholder receives no benefit.

(p) The term “discount” as used in section 1666f of this title means a reduction made from the regular price. The term “discount” as used in section 1666f of this title shall not mean a surcharge.

(q) The term “surcharge” as used in this section and section 1666f of this title means any means of increasing the regular price to a cardholder which is not imposed upon customers paying by cash, check, or similar means.”

(r) The term “State” refers to any State, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, the District of Columbia, and any territory or possession of the United States.

(s) The term “agricultural purposes” includes the production, harvest, exhibition, marketing, transportation, processing, or manufacture of agricultural products by a natural person who cultivates, plants, propagates, or nurtures those agricultural products, including but not limited to the acquisition of farmland, real property with a farm residence, and personal property and services used primarily in farming.

(t) The term “agricultural products” includes agricultural, horticultural, viticultural, and dairy products, livestock, wildlife, poultry, bees, forest products, fish and shellfish, and any products thereof, including processed and manufactured products, and any and all products raised or produced on farms and any processed or manufactured products thereof.

(u) The term “material disclosures” means the disclosure, as required by this subchapter, of the annual percentage rate, the method of determining the finance charge and the balance upon which a finance charge will be imposed, the amount of the finance charge, the amount to be financed, the total of payments, the number and amount of payments, the due dates or periods of payments scheduled to repay the indebtedness, and the disclosures required by section 1639(a) of this title.

(v) The term “dwelling” means a residential structure or mobile home which contains one to

four family housing units, or individual units of condominiums or cooperatives.

(w) The term “residential mortgage transaction” means a transaction in which a mortgage, deed of trust, purchase money security interest arising under an installment sales contract, or equivalent consensual security interest is created or retained against the consumer’s dwelling to finance the acquisition or initial construction of such dwelling.

(x) As used in this section and section 1666f of this title, the term “regular price” means the tag or posted price charged for the property or service if a single price is tagged or posted, or the price charged for the property or service when payment is made by use of an open-end credit plan or a credit card if either (1) no price is tagged or posted, or (2) two prices are tagged or posted, one of which is charged when payment is made by use of an open-end credit plan or a credit card and the other when payment is made by use of cash, check, or similar means. For purposes of this definition, payment by check, draft, or other negotiable instrument which may result in the debiting of an open-end credit plan or a credit cardholder’s open-end account shall not be considered payment made by use of the plan or the account.

(y) Any reference to any requirement imposed under this subchapter or any provision thereof includes reference to the regulations of the Board under this subchapter or the provision thereof in question.

(z) The disclosure of an amount or percentage which is greater than the amount or percentage required to be disclosed under this subchapter does not in itself constitute a violation of this subchapter.

(aa)(1) A mortgage referred to in this subsection means a consumer credit transaction that is secured by the consumer’s principal dwelling, other than a residential mortgage transaction, a reverse mortgage transaction, or a transaction under an open end credit plan, if—

(A) the annual percentage rate at consummation of the transaction will exceed by more than 10 percentage points the yield on Treasury securities having comparable periods of maturity on the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which the application for the extension of credit is received by the creditor; or

(B) the total points and fees payable by the consumer at or before closing will exceed the greater of—

- (i) 8 percent of the total loan amount; or
- (ii) \$400.

(2)(A) After the 2-year period beginning on the effective date of the regulations promulgated under section 155 of the Riegle Community Development and Regulatory Improvement Act of 1994, and no more frequently than biennially after the first increase or decrease under this subparagraph, the Board may by regulation increase or decrease the number of percentage points specified in paragraph (1)(A), if the Board determines that the increase or decrease is—

(i) consistent with the consumer protections against abusive lending provided by the amendments made by subtitle B of title I of the Riegle Community Development and Regulatory Improvement Act of 1994; and

(ii) warranted by the need for credit.

(B) An increase or decrease under subparagraph (A) may not result in the number of percentage points referred to in subparagraph (A) being—

- (i) less than 8 percentage points; or
- (ii) greater than 12 percentage points.

(C) In determining whether to increase or decrease the number of percentage points referred to in subparagraph (A), the Board shall consult with representatives of consumers, including low-income consumers, and lenders.

(3) The amount specified in paragraph (1)(B)(ii) shall be adjusted annually on January 1 by the annual percentage change in the Consumer Price Index, as reported on June 1 of the year preceding such adjustment.

(4) For purposes of paragraph (1)(B), points and fees shall include—

(A) all items included in the finance charge, except interest or the time-price differential;

(B) all compensation paid to mortgage brokers;

(C) each of the charges listed in section 1605(e) of this title (except an escrow for future payment of taxes), unless—

- (i) the charge is reasonable;
- (ii) the creditor receives no direct or indirect compensation; and
- (iii) the charge is paid to a third party unaffiliated with the creditor; and

(D) such other charges as the Board determines to be appropriate.

(5) This subsection shall not be construed to limit the rate of interest or the finance charge that a person may charge a consumer for any extension of credit.

(bb) The term “reverse mortgage transaction” means a nonrecourse transaction in which a mortgage, deed of trust, or equivalent consensual security interest is created against the consumer’s principal dwelling—

(1) securing one or more advances; and

(2) with respect to which the payment of any principal, interest, and shared appreciation or equity is due and payable (other than in the case of default) only after—

- (A) the transfer of the dwelling;
- (B) the consumer ceases to occupy the dwelling as a principal dwelling; or
- (C) the death of the consumer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §103, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 147; Pub. L. 91-508, title V, §501, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1126; Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §303, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1511; Pub. L. 94-222, §3(a), Feb. 27, 1976, 90 Stat. 197; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §§602, 603(a), (b), 604, 612(a)(2), (b), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 168, 169, 175, 176; Pub. L. 97-25, title I, §102, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 144; Pub. L. 97-320, title VII, §702(a), Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1538; Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §§152(a)-(c), 154(a), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2190, 2191, 2196.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Riegle Community Development and Regulatory Improvement Act of 1994, referred to in subsec. (aa)(2)(A)(i), is Pub. L. 103-325, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2160. Section 155 of the Act is set out below. For classification of subtitle B of title I of the Act, known as the

“Home Ownership and Equity Protection Act of 1994”, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note set out under section 1601 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 4701 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, and Tables.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 103-325, §152(c), inserted at end “Any person who originates 2 or more mortgages referred to in subsection (aa) of this section in any 12-month period or any person who originates 1 or more such mortgages through a mortgage broker shall be considered to be a creditor for purposes of this subchapter.”

Subsec. (u). Pub. L. 103-325, §152(b), substituted “the due dates” for “and the due dates” and inserted before period at end “, and the disclosures required by section 1639(a) of this title”.

Subsec. (aa). Pub. L. 103-325, §152(a), added subsec. (aa).

Subsec. (bb). Pub. L. 103-325, §154(a), added subsec. (bb).

1982—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 97-320 struck out provision that a person who regularly arranged for the extension of consumer credit payable in more than four installments or for which the payment of a finance charge was or might have been required from persons not creditors was a creditor, and provision that this subchapter applied to any creditor, irrespective of his or its status as a natural person or any type of organization, who was a card issuer.

1981—Subsecs. (x) to (z). Pub. L. 97-25 added subsec. (z) and, effective Apr. 10, 1982, redesignated subsecs. (x), (y), and (z) as (y), (z), and (x), respectively.

1980—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-221, §602(a), substituted provisions defining term “creditor” as referring only to a person who both regularly extends consumer credit, subject to specified conditions, and is the person to whom the debt arising is initially payable on the face of the indebtedness or by agreement, and notwithstanding such provisions, also refers to a person regularly arranging for the extension of consumer credit, and a card issuer and any person honoring the credit card, subject to specified conditions, for provisions defining term “creditor” as referring only to creditors who regularly extend, or arrange for the extension of credit payable in more than four installments or where a finance charge is or may be required, and substituted “(a)(5)” for “(a)(6)”, “(a)(6)” for “(a)(7)”, “(a)(7)” for “(a)(8)”, “(b)(8)” for “(b)(9)”, and “(b)(10)” for “(b)(11)”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-221, §602(b), substituted “in which the seller is a creditor” for “with respect to which credit is extended or arranged by the seller”.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(a), struck out applicability to agricultural purposes.

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 96-221, §604, inserted provisions respecting the reasonable contemplations of the creditor, and verification of credit information from time to time.

Subsecs. (s), (t). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(b), added subsecs. (s) and (t). Former subsecs. (s) and (t) redesignated (x) and (y), respectively.

Subsec. (u). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(2), added subsec. (u).

Subsecs. (v), (w). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(b), added subsecs. (v) and (w).

Subsecs. (x), (y). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(b), redesignated former subsecs. (s) and (t) as (x) and (y), respectively.

1976—Subsecs. (p) to (t). Pub. L. 94-222 added subsecs. (p) and (q) and redesignated former subsecs. (p) to (r) as (r) to (t), respectively.

1974—Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-495 inserted provision requiring the credit to be payable by agreement in more than four installments and defining term “creditor” for the purposes of the requirements imposed under the enumerated sections of this chapter.

1970—Subsecs. (j) to (r). Pub. L. 91-508 added subsecs. (j) to (o) and redesignated former subsecs. (j) to (l) as (p) to (r), respectively.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Section 702(b) of Pub. L. 97-320 provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] shall take effect on the effective date of title VI of the Depository Institutions Deregulation and Monetary Control Act of 1980 [two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, see Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note below].”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1981 AMENDMENT

Section 102(b) of Pub. L. 97-25 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective Apr. 10, 1982.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Section 625 of title VI of Pub. L. 96-221, as amended by Pub. L. 97-25, title III, §301, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 145; Pub. L. 97-110, title III, §301, Dec. 26, 1981, 95 Stat. 1515, provided that:

“(a) Except as provided in section 608(b) [set out as an Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note under section 1607 of this title], the amendments made by this title [enacting section 1646 of this title, amending sections 57a, 1602 to 1606, 1610, 1612, 1613, 1631, 1632, 1635, 1637, 1638, 1640, 1641, 1643, 1663, 1664, 1665a, 1666, 1666d, 1667d, and 1691f of this title, repealing sections 1614, 1636, and 1639 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1601 of this title] shall take effect upon the expiration of two years and six months after the date of enactment of this title [Mar. 31, 1980].

“(b) All regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed under the amendments made by this title shall be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date.

“(c) Notwithstanding subsections (a) and (b), any creditor may comply with the amendments made by this title, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board, prior to such effective date. Any creditor who elects to comply with such amendments and any assignee of such a creditor shall be subject to the provisions of sections 130 and 131 of the Truth in Lending Act, as amended by sections 615 and 616, respectively, of this title [sections 1640 and 1641 of this title].”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 93-495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

## REGULATIONS

Section 155 of title I of Pub. L. 103-325 provided that: “Not later than 180 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994], the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall issue such regulations as may be necessary to carry out this subtitle [subtitle B (§§151-158) of title I of Pub. L. 103-325, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note set out under section 1601 of this title], and such regulations shall become effective on the date on which disclosure regulations are required to become effective under section 105(d) of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. §1604(d)].”

## APPLICABILITY OF 1994 AMENDMENTS AND REGULATIONS TO SUBSECTION (aa) MORTGAGES

Section 156 of title I of Pub. L. 103-325 provided that: “This subtitle [subtitle B (§§151-158) of title I of Pub. L. 103-325, see Short Title of 1994 Amendment note set out under section 1601 of this title], and the amendments made by this subtitle, shall apply to every mortgage referred to in section 103(aa) of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. 1602(aa)] (as added by section 152(a) of this Act) consummated on or after the date on which regulations issued under section 155 [set out above] become effective.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1604, 1605, 1610, 1615, 1631, 1635, 1638, 1639, 1641, 1667, 1693a, 1693g of this

title; title 12 sections 1735f-5, 1735f-7a, 1834b, 2602, 3401; title 18 section 1030; title 42 section 5511.

## § 1603. Exempted transactions

This subchapter does not apply to the following:

(1) Credit transactions involving extensions of credit primarily for business, commercial, or agricultural purposes, or to government or governmental agencies or instrumentalities, or to organizations.

(2) Transactions in securities or commodities accounts by a broker-dealer registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission.

(3) Credit transactions, other than those in which a security interest is or will be acquired in real property, or in personal property used or expected to be used as the principal dwelling of the consumer, in which the total amount financed exceeds \$25,000.

(4) Transactions under public utility tariffs, if the Board determines that a State regulatory body regulates the charges for the public utility services involved, the charges for delayed payment, and any discount allowed for early payment.

(5) Repealed. Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §603(c)(3), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 169.

(6) Loans made, insured, or guaranteed pursuant to a program authorized by title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 [20 U.S.C. 1070 et seq., 42 U.S.C. 2751 et seq.].

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §104, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 147; Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §402, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1517; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §603(c), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 169; Pub. L. 97-320, title VII, §701(a), Oct. 15, 1982, 96 Stat. 1538.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Higher Education Act of 1965, referred to in par. (6), is Pub. L. 89-329, Nov. 8, 1965, 79 Stat. 1219, as amended. Title IV of the Higher Education Act of 1965 is classified generally to subchapter IV (§1070 et seq.) of chapter 28 of Title 20, Education, and part C (§2751 et seq.) of subchapter I of chapter 34 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 1001 of Title 20 and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Par. (6). Pub. L. 97-320 added par. (6).

1980—Par. (1). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(c)(1), inserted provision relating to applicability to agricultural purposes.

Par. (3). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(c)(2), substituted provision excepting security interest in real property, or in personal property used as the consumer's principal dwelling, for provisions excepting real property transactions.

Par. (5). Pub. L. 96-221, §603(c)(3), struck out par. (5) which related to credit transactions primarily for agricultural purposes where the amount financed exceeds \$25,000.

1974—Par. (5). Pub. L. 93-495 added par. (5).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1982 AMENDMENT

Section 701(c) of Pub. L. 97-320, as amended by Pub. L. 97-457, §31, Jan. 12, 1983, 96 Stat. 2511, provided that: “The amendment made by subsection (a) [amending this section] and subsection (b) [enacting section 1099 of Title 20, Education] shall be effective with respect to loans made prior to, on, and after the date of the enactment of this Act [Oct. 15, 1982].”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 93-495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

## EXCEPTIONS IN AREAS WHERE MAJOR DISASTER EXISTS

Board of Governors of Federal Reserve System authorized to make exceptions to requirements of this subchapter for transactions within an area in which the President has determined that a major disaster exists, if Board determines that exception can reasonably be expected to alleviate hardships to the public that outweigh possible adverse effects, see section 2 of Pub. L. 103-76, set out as a note under section 4008 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1645 of this title.

**§ 1604. Disclosure guidelines****(a) Promulgation, contents, etc., of regulations**

The Board shall prescribe regulations to carry out the purposes of this subchapter. Except in the case of a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, these regulations may contain such classifications, differentiations, or other provisions, and may provide for such adjustments and exceptions for any class of transactions, as in the judgment of the Board are necessary or proper to effectuate the purposes of this subchapter, to prevent circumvention or evasion thereof, or to facilitate compliance therewith.

**(b) Model disclosure forms and clauses; publication, criteria, compliance, etc.**

The Board shall publish model disclosure forms and clauses for common transactions to facilitate compliance with the disclosure requirements of this subchapter and to aid the borrower or lessee in understanding the transaction by utilizing readily understandable language to simplify the technical nature of the disclosures. In devising such forms, the Board shall consider the use by creditors or lessors of data processing or similar automated equipment. Nothing in this subchapter may be construed to require a creditor or lessor to use any such model form or clause prescribed by the Board under this section. A creditor or lessor shall be deemed to be in compliance with the disclosure provisions of this subchapter with respect to other than numerical disclosures if the creditor or lessor (1) uses any appropriate model form or clause as published by the Board, or (2) uses any such model form or clause and changes it by (A) deleting any information which is not required by this subchapter, or (B) rearranging the format, if in making such deletion or rearranging the format, the creditor or lessor does not affect the substance, clarity, or meaningful sequence of the disclosure.

**(c) Procedures applicable for adoption of model forms and clauses**

Model disclosure forms and clauses shall be adopted by the Board after notice duly given in the Federal Register and an opportunity for public comment in accordance with section 553 of title 5.

**(d) Effective dates of regulations containing new disclosure requirements**

Any regulation of the Board, or any amendment or interpretation thereof, requiring any disclosure which differs from the disclosures previously required by this part, part D, or part E of this subchapter or by any regulation of the Board promulgated thereunder shall have an effective date of that October 1 which follows by at least six months the date of promulgation, except that the Board may at its discretion take interim action by regulation, amendment, or interpretation to lengthen the period of time permitted for creditors or lessors to adjust their forms to accommodate new requirements or shorten the length of time for creditors or lessors to make such adjustments when it makes a specific finding that such action is necessary to comply with the findings of a court or to prevent unfair or deceptive disclosure practices. Notwithstanding the previous sentence, any creditor or lessor may comply with any such newly promulgated disclosure requirements prior to the effective date of the requirements.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 105, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 148; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 605, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 170; Pub. L. 103-325, title I, § 152(e)(2)(A), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2194.)

## AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 103-325 substituted “Except in the case of a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, these” for “These” in second sentence.

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a) and added subsecs. (b) to (d).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1605. Determination of finance charge****(a) “Finance charge” defined**

Except as otherwise provided in this section, the amount of the finance charge in connection with any consumer credit transaction shall be determined as the sum of all charges, payable directly or indirectly by the person to whom the credit is extended, and imposed directly or indirectly by the creditor as an incident to the extension of credit. The finance charge does not include charges of a type payable in a comparable cash transaction. The finance charge shall not include fees and amounts imposed by third party closing agents (including settlement agents, attorneys, and escrow and title companies) if the creditor does not require the imposi-

tion of the charges or the services provided and does not retain the charges. Examples of charges which are included in the finance charge include any of the following types of charges which are applicable:

(1) Interest, time price differential, and any amount payable under a point, discount, or other system or additional charges.

(2) Service or carrying charge.

(3) Loan fee, finder's fee, or similar charge.

(4) Fee for an investigation or credit report.

(5) Premium or other charge for any guarantee or insurance protecting the creditor against the obligor's default or other credit loss.

(6) Borrower-paid mortgage broker fees, including fees paid directly to the broker or the lender (for delivery to the broker) whether such fees are paid in cash or financed.

**(b) Life, accident, or health insurance premiums included in finance charge**

Charges or premiums for credit life, accident, or health insurance written in connection with any consumer credit transaction shall be included in the finance charges unless

(1) the coverage of the debtor by the insurance is not a factor in the approval by the creditor of the extension of credit, and this fact is clearly disclosed in writing to the person applying for or obtaining the extension of credit; and

(2) in order to obtain the insurance in connection with the extension of credit, the person to whom the credit is extended must give specific affirmative written indication of his desire to do so after written disclosure to him of the cost thereof.

**(c) Property damage and liability insurance premiums included in finance charge**

Charges or premiums for insurance, written in connection with any consumer credit transaction, against loss of or damage to property or against liability arising out of the ownership or use of property, shall be included in the finance charge unless a clear and specific statement in writing is furnished by the creditor to the person to whom the credit is extended, setting forth the cost of the insurance if obtained from or through the creditor, and stating that the person to whom the credit is extended may choose the person through which the insurance is to be obtained.

**(d) Items exempted from computation of finance charge in all credit transactions**

If any of the following items is itemized and disclosed in accordance with the regulations of the Board in connection with any transaction, then the creditor need not include that item in the computation of the finance charge with respect to that transaction:

(1) Fees and charges prescribed by law which actually are or will be paid to public officials for determining the existence of or for perfecting or releasing or satisfying any security related to the credit transaction.

(2) The premium payable for any insurance in lieu of perfecting any security interest otherwise required by the creditor in connection with the transaction, if the premium does

not exceed the fees and charges described in paragraph (1) which would otherwise be payable.

(3) Any tax levied on security instruments or on documents evidencing indebtedness if the payment of such taxes is a precondition for recording the instrument securing the evidence of indebtedness.

**(e) Items exempted from computation of finance charge in extensions of credit secured by an interest in real property**

The following items, when charged in connection with any extension of credit secured by an interest in real property, shall not be included in the computation of the finance charge with respect to that transaction:

(1) Fees or premiums for title examination, title insurance, or similar purposes.

(2) Fees for preparation of loan-related documents.

(3) Escrows for future payments of taxes and insurance.

(4) Fees for notarizing deeds and other documents.

(5) Appraisal fees, including fees related to any pest infestation or flood hazard inspections conducted prior to closing.

(6) Credit reports.

**(f) Tolerances for accuracy**

In connection with credit transactions not under an open end credit plan that are secured by real property or a dwelling, the disclosure of the finance charge and other disclosures affected by any finance charge—

(1) shall be treated as being accurate for purposes of this subchapter if the amount disclosed as the finance charge—

(A) does not vary from the actual finance charge by more than \$100; or

(B) is greater than the amount required to be disclosed under this subchapter; and

(2) shall be treated as being accurate for purposes of section 1635 of this title if—

(A) except as provided in subparagraph (B), the amount disclosed as the finance charge does not vary from the actual finance charge by more than an amount equal to one-half of one percent of the total amount of credit extended; or

(B) in the case of a transaction, other than a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, which—

(i) is a refinancing of the principal balance then due and any accrued and unpaid finance charges of a residential mortgage transaction as defined in section 1602(w) of this title, or is any subsequent refinancing of such a transaction; and

(ii) does not provide any new consolidation or new advance;

if the amount disclosed as the finance charge does not vary from the actual finance charge by more than an amount equal to one percent of the total amount of credit extended.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §106, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 148; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI §606, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 170; Pub. L. 104-29, §§2(a), (b)(1), (c)-(e), 3(a), Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 271, 272.)

## AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 104–29, §2(a), in introductory provisions inserted after second sentence “The finance charge shall not include fees and amounts imposed by third party closing agents (including settlement agents, attorneys, and escrow and title companies) if the creditor does not require the imposition of the charges or the services provided and does not retain the charges.”

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 104–29, §2(b)(1), added par. (6).  
Subsec. (d)(3). Pub. L. 104–29, §2(c), added par. (3).

Subsec. (e)(2). Pub. L. 104–29, §2(d), amended par. (2) generally, substituting “loan-related” for “a deed, settlement statement, or other”.

Subsec. (e)(5). Pub. L. 104–29, §2(e), inserted before period “, including fees related to any pest infestation or flood hazard inspections conducted prior to closing”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104–29, §3(a), added subsec. (f).

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96–221, §606(a), inserted provisions excluding charges of a type payable in comparable cash transactions and indicated that pars. (1) to (5) are examples of charges.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96–221, §606(b), struck out pars. (3) and (4) setting forth applicability to taxes and any other type of charge, respectively.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Section 2(b)(2) of Pub. L. 104–29 provided that: “The amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall take effect on the earlier of—

“(A) 60 days after the date on which the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System issues final regulations under paragraph (3) [set out below]; or

“(B) the date that is 12 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 30, 1995].”

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96–221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96–221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## REGULATIONS

Section 2(b)(3) of Pub. L. 104–29 provided that: “The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall promulgate regulations implementing the amendment made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] by no later than 6 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 30, 1995].”

## ENSURING THAT FINANCE CHARGES REFLECT COST OF CREDIT

Section 2(f) of Pub. L. 104–29 provided that:

“(1) REPORT.—

“(A) IN GENERAL.—Not later than 6 months after the date of the enactment of this Act [Sept. 30, 1995], the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall submit to the Congress a report containing recommendations on any regulatory or statutory changes necessary—

“(i) to ensure that finance charges imposed in connection with consumer credit transactions more accurately reflect the cost of providing credit; and

“(ii) to address abusive refinancing practices engaged in for the purpose of avoiding rescission.

“(B) REPORT REQUIREMENTS.—In preparing the report under this paragraph, the Board shall—

“(i) consider the extent to which it is feasible to include in finance charges all charges payable directly or indirectly by the consumer to whom credit is extended, and imposed directly or indirectly by the creditor as an incident to the extension of credit (especially those charges excluded from finance

charges under section 106 of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. 1605] as of the date of the enactment of this Act), excepting only those charges which are payable in a comparable cash transaction; and

“(ii) consult with and consider the views of affected industries and consumer groups.

“(2) REGULATIONS.—The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe any appropriate regulation in order to effect any change included in the report under paragraph (1), and shall publish the regulation in the Federal Register before the end of the 1-year period beginning on the date of enactment of this Act.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1602, 1607, 1635, 1638, 1649, 1666f of this title; title 12 section 1735f–7a.

**§ 1606. Determination of annual percentage rate****(a) “Annual percentage rate” defined**

The annual percentage rate applicable to any extension of consumer credit shall be determined, in accordance with the regulations of the Board,

(1) in the case of any extension of credit other than under an open end credit plan, as

(A) that nominal annual percentage rate which will yield a sum equal to the amount of the finance charge when it is applied to the unpaid balances of the amount financed, calculated according to the actuarial method of allocating payments made on a debt between the amount financed and the amount of the finance charge, pursuant to which a payment is applied first to the accumulated finance charge and the balance is applied to the unpaid amount financed; or

(B) the rate determined by any method prescribed by the Board as a method which materially simplifies computation while retaining reasonable accuracy as compared with the rate determined under subparagraph (A).

(2) in the case of any extension of credit under an open end credit plan, as the quotient (expressed as a percentage) of the total finance charge for the period to which it relates divided by the amount upon which the finance charge for that period is based, multiplied by the number of such periods in a year.

**(b) Computation of rate of finance charges for balances within a specified range**

Where a creditor imposes the same finance charge for balances within a specified range, the annual percentage rate shall be computed on the median balance within the range, except that if the Board determines that a rate so computed would not be meaningful, or would be materially misleading, the annual percentage rate shall be computed on such other basis as the Board may by regulation require.

**(c) Allowable tolerances for purposes of compliance with disclosure requirements**

The disclosure of an annual percentage rate is accurate for the purpose of this subchapter if the rate disclosed is within a tolerance not greater than one-eighth of 1 per centum more or less than the actual rate or rounded to the nearest one-fourth of 1 per centum. The Board may allow a greater tolerance to simplify compliance where irregular payments are involved.

**(d) Use of rate tables or charts having allowable variance from determined rates**

The Board may authorize the use of rate tables or charts which may provide for the disclosure of annual percentage rates which vary from the rate determined in accordance with subsection (a)(1)(A) of this section by not more than such tolerances as the Board may allow. The Board may not allow a tolerance greater than 8 per centum of that rate except to simplify compliance where irregular payments are involved.

**(e) Authorization of tolerances in determining annual percentage rates**

In the case of creditors determining the annual percentage rate in a manner other than as described in subsection (d) of this section, the Board may authorize other reasonable tolerances.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 107, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 149; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 607, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 170.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-221, § 607(a), substituted provisions relating to allowable tolerances for purposes of compliance with disclosure requirements, for provisions relating to rounding off of annual percentage rates which are converted from single add-on or other rates.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-221, § 607(b), struck out reference to subsection (c) of this section.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-221, § 607(c), struck out subsec. (f) setting forth requirements for form of expressing percentage rates prior to Jan. 1, 1971.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1607, 1611, 1637, 1638, 1640 of this title.

**§ 1607. Administrative enforcement****(a) Enforcing agencies**

Compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter shall be enforced under

(1) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], in the case of—

(A) national banks, and Federal branches and Federal agencies of foreign banks, by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), branches and agencies of foreign banks (other than Federal branches, Federal agencies, and insured State branches of foreign banks), commercial lending companies owned or controlled by foreign banks, and organizations operating under section 25 or 25(a)<sup>1</sup> of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.], by the Board; and

(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System) and insured State branches of foreign banks, by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(2) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], by the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(3) the Federal Credit Union Act [12 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.], by the National Credit Union Administration Board with respect to any Federal credit union.

(4) part A of subtitle VII of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation with respect to any air carrier or foreign air carrier subject to that part.

(5) the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921 [7 U.S.C. 181 et seq.] (except as provided in section 406 of that Act [7 U.S.C. 226, 227]), by the Secretary of Agriculture with respect to any activities subject to that Act.

(6) the Farm Credit Act of 1971 [12 U.S.C. 2001 et seq.] by the Farm Credit Administration with respect to any Federal land bank, Federal land bank association, Federal intermediate credit bank, or production credit association.

The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).

**(b) Violations of this subchapter deemed violations of pre-existing statutory requirements; additional agency powers**

For the purpose of the exercise by any agency referred to in subsection (a) of this section of its powers under any Act referred to in that subsection, a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. In addition to its powers under any provision of law specifically referred to in subsection (a) of this section, each of the agencies referred to in that subsection may exercise, for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter, any other authority conferred on it by law.

**(c) Federal Trade Commission as overall enforcing agency**

Except to the extent that enforcement of the requirements imposed under this subchapter is specifically committed to some other Government agency under subsection (a) of this section, the Federal Trade Commission shall enforce such requirements. For the purpose of the exercise by the Federal Trade Commission of its functions and powers under the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.], a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. All of the functions and powers of the Federal Trade Commission under the Federal Trade Commission Act

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

are available to the Commission to enforce compliance by any person with the requirements imposed under this subchapter, irrespective of whether that person is engaged in commerce or meets any other jurisdictional tests in the Federal Trade Commission Act.

**(d) Rules and regulations**

The authority of the Board to issue regulations under this subchapter does not impair the authority of any other agency designated in this section to make rules respecting its own procedures in enforcing compliance with requirements imposed under this subchapter.

**(e) Adjustment of finance charges; procedures applicable, coverage, criteria, etc.**

(1) In carrying out its enforcement activities under this section, each agency referred to in subsection (a) or (c) of this section, in cases where an annual percentage rate or finance charge was inaccurately disclosed, shall notify the creditor of such disclosure error and is authorized in accordance with the provisions of this subsection to require the creditor to make an adjustment to the account of the person to whom credit was extended, to assure that such person will not be required to pay a finance charge in excess of the finance charge actually disclosed or the dollar equivalent of the annual percentage rate actually disclosed, whichever is lower. For the purposes of this subsection, except where such disclosure error resulted from a willful violation which was intended to mislead the person to whom credit was extended, in determining whether a disclosure error has occurred and in calculating any adjustment, (A) each agency shall apply (i) with respect to the annual percentage rate, a tolerance of one-quarter of 1 percent more or less than the actual rate, determined without regard to section 1606(c) of this title, and (ii) with respect to the finance charge, a corresponding numerical tolerance as generated by the tolerance provided under this subsection for the annual percentage rate; except that (B) with respect to transactions consummated after two years following March 31, 1980, each agency shall apply (i) for transactions that have a scheduled amortization of ten years or less, with respect to the annual percentage rate, a tolerance not to exceed one-quarter of 1 percent more or less than the actual rate, determined without regard to section 1606(c) of this title, but in no event a tolerance of less than the tolerances allowed under section 1606(c) of this title, (ii) for transactions that have a scheduled amortization of more than ten years, with respect to the annual percentage rate, only such tolerances as are allowed under section 1606(c) of this title, and (iii) for all transactions, with respect to the finance charge, a corresponding numerical tolerance as generated by the tolerances provided under this subsection for the annual percentage rate.

(2) Each agency shall require such an adjustment when it determines that such disclosure error resulted from (A) a clear and consistent pattern or practice of violations, (B) gross negligence, or (C) a willful violation which was intended to mislead the person to whom the credit was extended. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, except where such disclosure error re-

sulted from a willful violation which was intended to mislead the person to whom credit was extended, an agency need not require such an adjustment if it determines that such disclosure error—

(A) resulted from an error involving the disclosure of a fee or charge that would otherwise be excludable in computing the finance charge, including but not limited to violations involving the disclosures described in sections 1605(b), (c) and (d) of this title, in which event the agency may require such remedial action as it determines to be equitable, except that for transactions consummated after two years after March 31, 1980, such an adjustment shall be ordered for violations of section 1605(b) of this title;

(B) involved a disclosed amount which was 10 per centum or less of the amount that should have been disclosed and (i) in cases where the error involved a disclosed finance charge, the annual percentage rate was disclosed correctly, and (ii) in cases where the error involved a disclosed annual percentage rate, the finance charge was disclosed correctly; in which event the agency may require such adjustment as it determines to be equitable;

(C) involved a total failure to disclose either the annual percentage rate or the finance charge, in which event the agency may require such adjustment as it determines to be equitable; or

(D) resulted from any other unique circumstance involving clearly technical and nonsubstantive disclosure violations that do not adversely affect information provided to the consumer and that have not misled or otherwise deceived the consumer.

In the case of other such disclosure errors, each agency may require such an adjustment.

(3) Notwithstanding paragraph (2), no adjustment shall be ordered (A) if it would have a significantly adverse impact upon the safety or soundness of the creditor, but in any such case, the agency may require a partial adjustment in an amount which does not have such an impact, except that with respect to any transaction consummated after March 31, 1980, the agency shall require the full adjustment, but permit the creditor to make the required adjustment in partial payments over an extended period of time which the agency considers to be reasonable, (B) if the amount of the adjustment would be less than \$1, except that if more than one year has elapsed since the date of the violation, the agency may require that such amount be paid into the Treasury of the United States, or (C) except where such disclosure error resulted from a willful violation which was intended to mislead the person to whom credit was extended, in the case of an open-end credit plan, more than two years after the violation, or in the case of any other extension of credit, as follows:

(i) with respect to creditors that are subject to examination by the agencies referred to in paragraphs (1) through (3) of subsection (a) of this section, except in connection with violations arising from practices identified in the current examination and only in connection with transactions that are consummated after

the date of the immediately preceding examination, except that where practices giving rise to violations identified in earlier examinations have not been corrected, adjustments for those violations shall be required in connection with transactions consummated after the date of examination in which such practices were first identified;

(ii) with respect to creditors that are not subject to examination by such agencies, except in connection with transactions that are consummated after May 10, 1978; and

(iii) in no event after the later of (I) the expiration of the life of the credit extension, or (II) two years after the agreement to extend credit was consummated.

(4)(A) Notwithstanding any other provision of this section, an adjustment under this subsection may be required by an agency referred to in subsection (a) or (c) of this section only by an order issued in accordance with cease and desist procedures provided by the provision of law referred to in such subsections.

(B) In case of an agency which is not authorized to conduct cease and desist proceedings, such an order may be issued after an agency hearing on the record conducted at least thirty but not more than sixty days after notice of the alleged violation is served on the creditor. Such a hearing shall be deemed to be a hearing which is subject to the provisions of section 8(h) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818(h)] and shall be subject to judicial review as provided therein.

(5) Except as otherwise specifically provided in this subsection and notwithstanding any provision of law referred to in subsection (a) or (c) of this section, no agency referred to in subsection (a) or (c) of this section may require a creditor to make dollar adjustments for errors in any requirements under this subchapter, except with regard to the requirements of section 1666d of this title.

(6) A creditor shall not be subject to an order to make an adjustment, if within sixty days after discovering a disclosure error, whether pursuant to a final written examination report or through the creditor's own procedures, the creditor notifies the person concerned of the error and adjusts the account so as to assure that such person will not be required to pay a finance charge in excess of the finance charge actually disclosed or the dollar equivalent of the annual percentage rate actually disclosed, whichever is lower.

(7) Notwithstanding the second sentence of subsection (e)(1), subsection (e)(3)(C)(i), and subsection (e)(3)(C)(ii) of this section, each agency referred to in subsection (a) or (c) of this section shall require an adjustment for an annual percentage rate disclosure error that exceeds a tolerance of one quarter of one percent less than the actual rate, determined without regard to section 1606(c) of this title, with respect to any transaction consummated between January 1, 1977, and March 31, 1980.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 108, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 150; Pub. L. 91-206, § 3, Mar. 10, 1970, 84 Stat. 49; Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, § 403, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1517; Pub. L. 95-630, title V, § 501, Nov. 10,

1978, 92 Stat. 3680; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 608(a), (c), Mar. 21, 1980, 94 Stat. 171, 173; Pub. L. 98-443, § 9(n), Oct. 4, 1984, 98 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, § 744(k), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, § 212(b), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2299; Pub. L. 102-550, title XVI, § 1604(a)(5), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4082.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(B), which is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, was renumbered section 25A of that act by Pub. L. 102-242, title I, § 142(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2281. Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Federal Credit Union Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is act June 26, 1934, ch. 750, 48 Stat. 1216, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 14 (§1751 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1751 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is act Aug. 15, 1921, ch. 64, 42 Stat. 159, as amended, which is classified to chapter 9 (§181 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 181 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Farm Credit Act of 1971, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), is Pub. L. 92-181, Dec. 10, 1971, 85 Stat. 583, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2001 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of this title and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(4), "part A of subtitle VII of title 49" substituted for "the Federal Aviation Act of 1958 [49 App. U.S.C. 1301 et seq.]" and "that part" substituted for "that Act" on authority of Pub. L. 103-272, § 6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 102-550 substituted semicolon for period at end.

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-242, § 212(b)(2), inserted at end "The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101)."

Pub. L. 102-242, § 212(b)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: "section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, in the case of

"(A) national banks, by the Comptroller of the Currency.

"(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), by the Board.

"(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System), by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation."

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-73 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: "section 5(d) of the Home Owner's Loan Act of 1933, section 407 of the National Housing Act, and sections 6(i) and 17 of the Federal Home Loan Bank Act, by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board (acting directly or

through the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation), in the case of any institution subject to any of those provisions.”

1984—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 98-443 substituted “Secretary of Transportation” for “Civil Aeronautics Board”.

1980—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-221, § 608(a), added subsec. (e).

Pub. L. 96-221, § 608(c), struck out in pars. (1)(A)(i) and (7) “, except in the case of an irregular mortgage lending transaction” after “section 1606(c) of this title”. See Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note below.

1974—Subsec. (a)(4) to (6). Pub. L. 93-495 redesignated pars. (5) and (6) as (4) and (5), respectively. Former par. (4), which related to enforcement by the Interstate Commerce Commission, was struck out.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-550 effective as if included in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991, Pub. L. 102-242, as of Dec. 19, 1991, see section 1609(a) of Pub. L. 102-550, set out as a note under section 191 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-443 effective Jan. 1, 1985, see section 9(v) of Pub. L. 98-443, set out as a note under section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Section 608(b) of Pub. L. 96-221 provided that: “This section [amending this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment of the Truth in Lending Simplification and Reform Act [Mar. 31, 1980].”

Section 608(c) of Pub. L. 96-221 provided that the amendment made by that section is effective one year after Mar. 31, 1980.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 93-495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

#### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“National Credit Union Administration Board” substituted for “Director of the Bureau of Federal Credit Unions” in subsec. (a)(3) pursuant to section 3 of Pub. L. 91-206 and section 501 of Pub. L. 95-630 [12 U.S.C. 1752a] which transferred functions of Bureau of Federal Credit Unions, and Director thereof, to National Credit Union Administration and vested authority for management of Administration in National Credit Union Administration Board.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1640, 1641 of this title; title 12 section 3806.

### § 1608. Views of other agencies

In the exercise of its functions under this subchapter, the Board may obtain upon requests the views of any other Federal agency which, in the judgment of the Board, exercises regulatory or supervisory functions with respect to any class of creditors subject to this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 109, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 150.)

### § 1609. Repealed. Pub. L. 94-239, § 3(b)(1), Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 253

Section, Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 110, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 151, provided for establishment of an advisory committee authorized to seek to achieve a fair representation of interests of sellers of merchandise on credit, lenders, and the public.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1691 of this title.

### § 1610. Effect on other laws

#### (a) Inconsistent provisions; procedures applicable for determination

(1) Except as provided in subsection (e) of this section, this part and parts B and C of this subchapter, do not annul, alter, or affect the laws of any State relating to the disclosure of information in connection with credit transactions, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. Upon its own motion or upon the request of any creditor, State or other interested party which is submitted in accordance with procedures prescribed in regulations of the Board, the Board shall determine whether any such inconsistency exists. If the Board determines that a State-required disclosure is inconsistent, creditors located in that State may not make disclosures using the inconsistent term or form, and shall incur no liability under the law of that State for failure to use such term or form, notwithstanding that such determination is subsequently amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

(2) Upon its own motion or upon the request of any creditor, State, or other interested party which is submitted in accordance with procedures prescribed in regulations of the Board, the Board shall determine whether any disclosure required under the law of any State is substantially the same in meaning as a disclosure required under this subchapter. If the Board determines that a State-required disclosure is substantially the same in meaning as a disclosure required by this subchapter, then creditors located in that State may make such disclosure in compliance with such State law in lieu of the disclosure required by this subchapter, except that the annual percentage rate and finance charge shall be disclosed as required by section 1632 of this title, and such State-required disclosure may not be made in lieu of the disclosures applicable to certain mortgages under section 1639 of this title.

#### (b) State credit charge statutes

Except as provided in section 1639 of this title, this subchapter does not otherwise annul, alter or affect in any manner the meaning, scope or applicability of the laws of any State, including, but not limited to, laws relating to the types, amounts or rates of charges, or any element or elements of charges, permissible under such laws in connection with the extension or use of credit, nor does this subchapter extend the applicability of those laws to any class of persons or transactions to which they would not otherwise apply. The provisions of section 1639 of this title do not annul, alter, or affect the applicability of the laws of any State or exempt any person subject to the provisions of section 1639 of this title from complying with the laws of any State, with respect to the requirements for mortgages referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, except to the extent that those State laws

are inconsistent with any provisions of section 1639 of this title, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.

**(c) Disclosure as evidence**

In any action or proceeding in any court involving a consumer credit sale, the disclosure of the annual percentage rate as required under this subchapter in connection with that sale may not be received as evidence that the sale was a loan or any type of transaction other than a credit sale.

**(d) Contract or other obligations under State or Federal law**

Except as specified in sections 1635, 1640, and 1666e of this title, this subchapter and the regulations issued thereunder do not affect the validity or enforceability of any contract or obligation under State or Federal law.

**(e) Certain credit and charge card application and solicitation disclosure provisions**

The provisions of subsection (c) of section 1632 of this title and subsections (c), (d), (e), and (f) of section 1637 of this title shall supersede any provision of the law of any State relating to the disclosure of information in any credit or charge card application or solicitation which is subject to the requirements of section 1637(c) of this title or any renewal notice which is subject to the requirements of section 1637(d) of this title, except that any State may employ or establish State laws for the purpose of enforcing the requirements of such sections.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 111, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 151; Pub. L. 93-495, title III, § 307(b), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1516; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 609, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 173; Pub. L. 100-583, § 4, Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2967; Pub. L. 103-325, title I, § 152(e)(2)(B), (C), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2194.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 103-325, § 152(e)(2)(B), which directed the amendment of par. (2) by inserting “, and such State-required disclosure may not be made in lieu of the disclosures applicable to certain mortgages under section 1639 of this title” before period, was executed by making the insertion before period at end of par. (2), to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-325, § 152(e)(2)(C), substituted “Except as provided in section 1639 of this title, this subchapter” for “This subchapter” and inserted at end “The provisions of section 1639 of this title do not annul, alter, or affect the applicability of the laws of any State or exempt any person subject to the provisions of section 1639 of this title from complying with the laws of any State, with respect to the requirements for mortgages referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, except to the extent that those State laws are inconsistent with any provisions of section 1639 of this title, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.”

1988—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 100-583, § 4(1), substituted “Except as provided in subsection (e) of this section, this part” for “This part”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 100-583, § 4(2), added subsec. (e).

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221 designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted provisions respecting the effect of this part and parts B and C of this subchapter, and procedures applicable for determination, for provisions respecting the effect of this subchapter, and added par. (2).

1974—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 93-495 inserted reference to section 1666e of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 93-495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1612, 1640 of this title.

**§ 1611. Criminal liability for willful and knowing violation**

Whoever willfully and knowingly

(1) gives false or inaccurate information or fails to provide information which he is required to disclose under the provisions of this subchapter or any regulation issued thereunder,

(2) uses any chart or table authorized by the Board under section 1606 of this title in such a manner as to consistently understate the annual percentage rate determined under section 1606(a)(1)(A) of this title, or

(3) otherwise fails to comply with any requirement imposed under this subchapter,

shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 112, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 151.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1640 of this title.

**§ 1612. Effect on government agencies**

**(a) Consultation requirements respecting compliance of credit instruments issued to participating creditor**

Any department or agency of the United States which administers a credit program in which it extends, insures, or guarantees consumer credit and in which it provides instruments to a creditor which contain any disclosures required by this subchapter shall, prior to the issuance or continued use of such instruments, consult with the Board to assure that such instruments comply with this subchapter.

**(b) Inapplicability of Federal civil or criminal penalties to Federal, State, and local agencies**

No civil or criminal penalty provided under this subchapter for any violation thereof may be imposed upon the United States or any department or agency thereof, or upon any State or political subdivision thereof, or any agency of any State of political subdivision.

**(c) Inapplicability of Federal civil or criminal penalties to participating creditor where violating instrument issued by United States**

A creditor participating in a credit program administered, insured, or guaranteed by any de-

partment or agency or the United States shall not be held liable for a civil or criminal penalty under this subchapter in any case in which the violation results from the use of an instrument required by any such department or agency.

**(d) Applicability of State penalties to violations by participating creditor**

A creditor participating in a credit program administered, insured, or guaranteed by any department or agency of the United States shall not be held liable for a civil or criminal penalty under the laws of any State (other than laws determined under section 1610 of this title to be inconsistent with this subchapter) for any technical or procedural failure, such as a failure to use a specific form, to make information available at a specific place on an instrument, or to use a specific typeface, as required by State law, which is caused by the use of an instrument required to be used by such department or agency.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 113, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 151; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 622(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 184.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 amended section generally, designating existing provisions as subsec. (b) and adding subsecs. (a), (c), and (d).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1613. Annual reports to Congress by Board**

Each year the Board shall make a report to the Congress concerning the administration of its functions under this subchapter, including such recommendations as the Board deems necessary or appropriate. In addition, each report of the Board shall include its assessment of the extent to which compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter is being achieved.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 114, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 151; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 610(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 174; Pub. L. 97-375, title II, § 209(b), Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1825.)

AMENDMENTS

1982—Pub. L. 97-375 struck out requirement that the Attorney General make a report on the same terms as the Board.

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 substituted “Each year” for “Not later than January 3 of each year after 1969.”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1614. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 616(b), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 182**

Section, Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 115, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, § 413(a), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1520, related to liability of assignees. See section 1641 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as an Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1615. Prohibition on use of “Rule of 78’s” in connection with mortgage refinancings and other consumer loans**

**(a) Prompt refund of unearned interest required**  
**(1) In general**

If a consumer prepays in full the financed amount under any consumer credit transaction, the creditor shall promptly refund any unearned portion of the interest charge to the consumer.

**(2) Exception for refund of de minimus amount**

No refund shall be required under paragraph (1) with respect to the prepayment of any consumer credit transaction if the total amount of the refund would be less than \$1.

**(3) Applicability to refinanced transactions and acceleration by the creditor**

This subsection shall apply with respect to any prepayment of a consumer credit transaction described in paragraph (1) without regard to the manner or the reason for the prepayment, including—

(A) any prepayment made in connection with the refinancing, consolidation, or restructuring of the transaction; and

(B) any prepayment made as a result of the acceleration of the obligation to repay the amount due with respect to the transaction.

**(b) Use of “Rule of 78’s” prohibited**

For the purpose of calculating any refund of interest required under subsection (a) of this section for any precomputed consumer credit transaction of a term exceeding 61 months which is consummated after September 30, 1993, the creditor shall compute the refund based on a method which is at least as favorable to the consumer as the actuarial method.

**(c) Statement of prepayment amount**

**(1) In general**

Before the end of the 5-day period beginning on the date an oral or written request is received by a creditor from a consumer for the disclosure of the amount due on any precomputed consumer credit account, the creditor or assignee shall provide the consumer with a statement of—

(A) the amount necessary to prepay the account in full; and

(B) if the amount disclosed pursuant to subparagraph (A) includes an amount which

is required to be refunded under this section with respect to such prepayment, the amount of such refund.

**(2) Written statement required if request is in writing**

If the customer's request is in writing, the statement under paragraph (1) shall be in writing.

**(3) 1 free annual statement**

A consumer shall be entitled to obtain 1 statement under paragraph (1) each year without charge.

**(4) Additional statements subject to reasonable fees**

Any creditor may impose a reasonable fee to cover the cost of providing any statement under paragraph (1) to any consumer in addition to the 1 free annual statement required under paragraph (3) if the amount of the charge for such additional statement is disclosed to the consumer before furnishing such statement.

**(d) Definitions**

For the purpose of this section—

**(1) Actuarial method**

The term “actuarial method” means the method of allocating payments made on a debt between the amount financed and the finance charge pursuant to which a payment is applied first to the accumulated finance charge and any remainder is subtracted from, or any deficiency is added to, the unpaid balance of the amount financed.

**(2) Consumer, credit**

The terms “consumer” and “creditor” have the meanings given to such terms in section 1602 of this title.

**(3) Creditor**

The term “creditor”—

(A) has the meaning given to such term in section 1602 of this title; and

(B) includes any assignee of any creditor with respect to credit extended in connection with any consumer credit transaction and any subsequent assignee with respect to such credit.

(Pub. L. 102-550, title IX, §933, Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 3891.)

CODIFICATION

Section was enacted as part of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, and not as part of the Consumer Credit Protection Act which comprises this chapter.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1639 of this title.

PART B—CREDIT TRANSACTIONS

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in section 1610 of this title.

**§ 1631. Disclosure requirements**

**(a) Duty of creditor or lessor respecting one or more than one obligor**

Subject to subsection (b) of this section, a creditor or lessor shall disclose to the person

who is obligated on a consumer lease or a consumer credit transaction the information required under this subchapter. In a transaction involving more than one obligor, a creditor or lessor, except in a transaction under section 1635 of this title, need not disclose to more than one of such obligors if the obligor given disclosure is a primary obligor.

**(b) Creditor or lessor required to make disclosure**

If a transaction involves one creditor as defined in section 1602(f) of this title, or one lessor as defined in section 1667(3) of this title, such creditor or lessor shall make the disclosures. If a transaction involves more than one creditor or lessor, only one creditor or lessor shall be required to make the disclosures. The Board shall by regulation specify which creditor or lessor shall make the disclosures.

**(c) Estimates as satisfying statutory requirements; basis of disclosure for per diem interest**

The Board may provide by regulation that any portion of the information required to be disclosed by this subchapter may be given in the form of estimates where the provider of such information is not in a position to know exact information. In the case of any consumer credit transaction a portion of the interest on which is determined on a per diem basis and is to be collected upon the consummation of such transaction, any disclosure with respect to such portion of interest shall be deemed to be accurate for purposes of this subchapter if the disclosure is based on information actually known to the creditor at the time that the disclosure documents are being prepared for the consummation of the transaction.

**(d) Tolerances for numerical disclosures**

The Board shall determine whether tolerances for numerical disclosures other than the annual percentage rate are necessary to facilitate compliance with this subchapter, and if it determines that such tolerances are necessary to facilitate compliance, it shall by regulation permit disclosures within such tolerances. The Board shall exercise its authority to permit tolerances for numerical disclosures other than the annual percentage rate so that such tolerances are narrow enough to prevent such tolerances from resulting in misleading disclosures or disclosures that circumvent the purposes of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §121, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 152; Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §307(c), (d), title IV, §409, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1516, 1519; Pub. L. 94-205, §11, Jan. 2, 1976, 89 Stat. 1159; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §611, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 174; Pub. L. 104-29, §3(b), Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 273.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 104-29 inserted at end “In the case of any consumer credit transaction a portion of the interest on which is determined on a per diem basis and is to be collected upon the consummation of such transaction, any disclosure with respect to such portion of interest shall be deemed to be accurate for purposes of this subchapter if the disclosure is based on information actually known to the creditor at the time

that the disclosure documents are being prepared for the consummation of the transaction.”

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions respecting to which obligor duty of creditor or lessor, where one or more than one obligor is involved, is owed, for provisions setting forth clear and conspicuous disclosure requirements for creditors to persons extended consumer credit.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions relating to disclosure requirements of creditor or lessor, for provisions relating to statement of information where more than one obligor is involved.

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 96-221 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-205 struck out subsec. (c) which related to disclosure including a full statement of closing costs incurred and permitted estimates of such information where the lender was not in a position to know exact information.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-495, §307(c), inserted reference to part D of this subchapter and struck out “and upon whom a finance charge is or may be imposed” after “extended”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-495, §307(d), inserted reference to part D of this subchapter.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-495, §409, added subsec (c).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-205 effective Jan. 2, 1976, see section 12 of Pub. L. 94-205, set out as a note under section 2602 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by section 307(c), (d) of Pub. L. 93-495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

For effective date of amendment by section 409 of Pub. L. 93-495, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 504(b) of Pub. L. 90-321 provided in part that chapter 2 of title I, which enacted sections 1631 to 1641 of this title, is effective July 1, 1969.

#### REAL ESTATE SETTLEMENT PROCEDURES

Provisions of Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act of 1974, as superseding provisions of subsec. (c) of this section insofar as applying to federally related mortgage loans, see section 2605 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1638 of this title.

### § 1632. Form of disclosure; additional information

#### (a) Information clearly and conspicuously disclosed; “annual percentage rate” and “finance charge”; order of disclosures and use of different terminology

Information required by this subchapter shall be disclosed clearly and conspicuously, in ac-

cordance with regulations of the Board. The terms “annual percentage rate” and “finance charge” shall be disclosed more conspicuously than other terms, data, or information provided in connection with a transaction, except information relating to the identify of the creditor. Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, regulations of the Board need not require that disclosures pursuant to this subchapter be made in the order set forth in this subchapter and, except as otherwise provided, may permit the use of terminology different from that employed in this subchapter if it conveys substantially the same meaning.

#### (b) Optional information by creditor or lessor

Any creditor or lessor may supply additional information or explanation with any disclosures required under parts D and E of this subchapter and, except as provided in sections 1637a(b)(3) and 1638(b)(1) of this title, under this part.

#### (c) Tabular format required for certain disclosures under section 1637(c)

##### (1) In general

The information described in paragraphs (1)(A), (3)(B)(i)(I), (4)(A), and (4)(C)(i)(I) of section 1637(c) of this title shall be—

(A) disclosed in the form and manner which the Board shall prescribe by regulations; and

(B) placed in a conspicuous and prominent location on or with any written application, solicitation, or other document or paper with respect to which such disclosure is required.

##### (2) Tabular format

###### (A) Form of table to be prescribed

In the regulations prescribed under paragraph (1)(A) of this subsection, the Board shall require that the disclosure of such information shall, to the extent the Board determines to be practicable and appropriate, be in the form of a table which—

(i) contains clear and concise headings for each item of such information; and

(ii) provides a clear and concise form for stating each item of information required to be disclosed under each such heading.

###### (B) Board discretion in prescribing order and wording of table

In prescribing the form of the table under subparagraph (A), the Board may—

(i) list the items required to be included in the table in a different order than the order in which such items are set forth in paragraph (1)(A) or (4)(A) of section 1637(c) of this title; and

(ii) subject to subparagraph (C), employ terminology which is different than the terminology which is employed in section 1637(c) of this title if such terminology conveys substantially the same meaning.

###### (C) Grace period

Either the heading or the statement under the heading which relates to the time period referred to in section 1637(c)(1)(A)(iii) of this title shall contain the term “grace period”.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §122, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 152; Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §307(e), (f), Oct. 28,

1974, 88 Stat. 1516, 1517; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 611, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 175; Pub. L. 100-583, § 2(b), Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2966; Pub. L. 100-709, § 2(d), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4731.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-583, § 2(b)(1), substituted “Except as provided in subsection (c) of this section, regulations” for “Regulations”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100-709 substituted “sections 1637a(b)(3) and 1638(b)(1)” for “section 1638(b)(1)”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 100-583, § 2(b)(2), added subsec. (c).  
1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions setting forth form of disclosure to meet requirements of this subchapter, for provisions setting forth form of disclosure authorized under this part or part D of this subchapter.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions setting forth disclosure requirements for additional information by creditors or lessors, for provisions setting forth disclosure requirements for additional information by creditors.

1974—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 93-495 inserted references to part D of this subchapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendments by Pub. L. 100-709, see Regulations; Effective Date note below.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by Pub. L. 93-495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

#### REGULATIONS; EFFECTIVE DATE

For provisions relating to promulgation of regulations to implement amendment by Pub. L. 100-709, and effective date of such amendment in connection with those regulations, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100-709, set out as a note under section 1637a of this title.

For provisions relating to promulgation of regulations to implement amendment by Pub. L. 100-583, and effective date of such amendment in connection with those regulations, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100-583, set out as a note under section 1637 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1610, 1637 of this title.

### § 1633. Exemption for State-regulated transactions

The Board shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of this part any class of credit transactions within any State if it determines that under the law of that State that class of transactions is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed under this part, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 123, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 152.)

### § 1634. Effect of subsequent occurrence

If information disclosed in accordance with this part is subsequently rendered inaccurate as

the result of any act, occurrence, or agreement subsequent to the delivery of the required disclosures, the inaccuracy resulting therefrom does not constitute a violation of this part.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 124, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 152.)

### § 1635. Right of rescission as to certain transactions

#### (a) Disclosure of obligor's right to rescind

Except as otherwise provided in this section, in the case of any consumer credit transaction (including opening or increasing the credit limit for an open end credit plan) in which a security interest, including any such interest arising by operation of law, is or will be retained or acquired in any property which is used as the principal dwelling of the person to whom credit is extended, the obligor shall have the right to rescind the transaction until midnight of the third business day following the consummation of the transaction or the delivery of the information and rescission forms required under this section together with a statement containing the material disclosures required under this subchapter, whichever is later, by notifying the creditor, in accordance with regulations of the Board, of his intention to do so. The creditor shall clearly and conspicuously disclose, in accordance with regulations of the Board, to any obligor in a transaction subject to this section the rights of the obligor under this section. The creditor shall also provide, in accordance with regulations of the Board, appropriate forms for the obligor to exercise his right to rescind any transaction subject to this section.

#### (b) Return of money or property following rescission

When an obligor exercises his right to rescind under subsection (a) of this section, he is not liable for any finance or other charge, and any security interest given by the obligor, including any such interest arising by operation of law, becomes void upon such a rescission. Within 20 days after receipt of a notice of rescission, the creditor shall return to the obligor any money or property given as earnest money, downpayment, or otherwise, and shall take any action necessary or appropriate to reflect the termination of any security interest created under the transaction. If the creditor has delivered any property to the obligor, the obligor may retain possession of it. Upon the performance of the creditor's obligations under this section, the obligor shall tender the property to the creditor, except that if return of the property in kind would be impracticable or inequitable, the obligor shall tender its reasonable value. Tender shall be made at the location of the property or at the residence of the obligor, at the option of the obligor. If the creditor does not take possession of the property within 20 days after tender by the obligor, ownership of the property vests in the obligor without obligation on his part to pay for it. The procedures prescribed by this subsection shall apply except when otherwise ordered by a court.

**(c) Rebuttable presumption of delivery of required disclosures**

Notwithstanding any rule of evidence, written acknowledgment of receipt of any disclosures required under this subchapter by a person to whom information, forms, and a statement is required to be given pursuant to this section does no more than create a rebuttable presumption of delivery thereof.

**(d) Modification and waiver of rights**

The Board may, if it finds that such action is necessary in order to permit homeowners to meet bona fide personal financial emergencies, prescribe regulations authorizing the modification or waiver of any rights created under this section to the extent and under the circumstances set forth in those regulations.

**(e) Exempted transactions; reapplication of provisions**

This section does not apply to—

- (1) a residential mortgage transaction as defined in section 1602(w) of this title;
- (2) a transaction which constitutes a refinancing or consolidation (with no new advances) of the principal balance then due and any accrued and unpaid finance charges of an existing extension of credit by the same creditor secured by an interest in the same property;
- (3) a transaction in which an agency of a State is the creditor; or
- (4) advances under a preexisting open end credit plan if a security interest has already been retained or acquired and such advances are in accordance with a previously established credit limit for such plan.

**(f) Time limit for exercise of right**

An obligor's right of rescission shall expire three years after the date of consummation of the transaction or upon the sale of the property, whichever occurs first, notwithstanding the fact that the information and forms required under this section or any other disclosures required under this part have not been delivered to the obligor, except that if (1) any agency empowered to enforce the provisions of this subchapter institutes a proceeding to enforce the provisions of this section within three years after the date of consummation of the transaction, (2) such agency finds a violation of this section, and (3) the obligor's right to rescind is based in whole or in part on any matter involved in such proceeding, then the obligor's right of rescission shall expire three years after the date of consummation of the transaction or upon the earlier sale of the property, or upon the expiration of one year following the conclusion of the proceeding, or any judicial review or period for judicial review thereof, whichever is later.

**(g) Additional relief**

In any action in which it is determined that a creditor has violated this section, in addition to rescission the court may award relief under section 1640 of this title for violations of this subchapter not relating to the right to rescind.

**(h) Limitation on rescission**

An obligor shall have no rescission rights arising solely from the form of written notice used

by the creditor to inform the obligor of the rights of the obligor under this section, if the creditor provided the obligor the appropriate form of written notice published and adopted by the Board, or a comparable written notice of the rights of the obligor, that was properly completed by the creditor, and otherwise complied with all other requirements of this section regarding notice.

**(i) Rescission rights in foreclosure****(1) In general**

Notwithstanding section 1649 of this title, and subject to the time period provided in subsection (f) of this section, in addition to any other right of rescission available under this section for a transaction, after the initiation of any judicial or nonjudicial foreclosure process on the primary dwelling of an obligor securing an extension of credit, the obligor shall have a right to rescind the transaction equivalent to other rescission rights provided by this section, if—

- (A) a mortgage broker fee is not included in the finance charge in accordance with the laws and regulations in effect at the time the consumer credit transaction was consummated; or
- (B) the form of notice of rescission for the transaction is not the appropriate form of written notice published and adopted by the Board or a comparable written notice, and otherwise complied with all the requirements of this section regarding notice.

**(2) Tolerance for disclosures**

Notwithstanding section 1605(f) of this title, and subject to the time period provided in subsection (f) of this section, for the purposes of exercising any rescission rights after the initiation of any judicial or nonjudicial foreclosure process on the principal dwelling of the obligor securing an extension of credit, the disclosure of the finance charge and other disclosures affected by any finance charge shall be treated as being accurate for purposes of this section if the amount disclosed as the finance charge does not vary from the actual finance charge by more than \$35 or is greater than the amount required to be disclosed under this subchapter.

**(3) Right of recoupment under State law**

Nothing in this subsection affects a consumer's right of rescission in recoupment under State law.

**(4) Applicability**

This subsection shall apply to all consumer credit transactions in existence or consummated on or after September 30, 1995.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §125, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 153; Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §§404, 405, 412, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1517, 1519; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §612(a)(1), (3)-(6), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 175, 176; Pub. L. 98-479, title II, §205, Oct. 17, 1984, 98 Stat. 2234; Pub. L. 104-29, §§5, 8, Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 274, 275.)

## AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 104-29, §5, added subsec. (h).  
Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104-29, §8, added subsec. (i).

1984—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 98-479 redesignated par. (1) as subsec. (e), redesignated subpars. (A), (B), (C), and (D) of par. (1) as pars. (1), (2), (3), and (4), respectively, and struck out par. (2) which read as follows: “The provisions of paragraph (1)(D) shall cease to be effective 3 years after the effective date of the Truth in Lending Simplification Reform Act.”

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(1), substituted provisions relating to the right of rescission until midnight of the third business day following the consummation of the transaction or the delivery of the information and rescission forms required together with the statement containing the material disclosures required under this subchapter, whichever is later, for provisions relating to right of rescission until midnight of the third business day following the consummation of the transaction or the delivery of the required disclosures and all other material disclosures required under this part, whichever is later.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(3), (4), inserted provisions setting forth applicability of procedures prescribed by this subsection, and substituted “20” for “ten” in two places.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(5), inserted “information, forms, and” after “whom”.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(6), substituted provisions relating to nonapplicability to residential mortgage transactions, refinancing or consolidation transactions, etc., for provisions relating to nonapplicability to creation or retention of first liens.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(6), substituted provisions setting forth duration of right of rescission where the required information and forms or other disclosures required under this part have not been delivered to the obligor, and exceptions to such term, for provisions setting forth duration of right of rescission where the required disclosures or any other material disclosures required under this part have not been delivered to the obligor.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-221, §612(a)(6), added subsec. (g).

1974—Subsecs. (a), (b). Pub. L. 93-495, §404, inserted provisions relating to security interest arising by operation of law.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 93-495, §412, inserted exemption for consumer credit transactions where a State agency is the creditor.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-495, §405, added subsec. (f).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 93-495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1605, 1610, 1631, 1639, 1640, 1641, 1649 of this title.

### § 1636. Repealed. Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §614(e)(1), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 180

Section, Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §126, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 153, related to contents of periodic statements.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF REPEAL

Repeal effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated

at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as an Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note under section 1602 of this title.

### § 1637. Open end consumer credit plans

#### (a) Required disclosures by creditor

Before opening any account under an open end consumer credit plan, the creditor shall disclose to the person to whom credit is to be extended each of the following items, to the extent applicable:

(1) The conditions under which a finance charge may be imposed, including the time period (if any) within which any credit extended may be repaid without incurring a finance charge, except that the creditor may, at his election and without disclosure, impose no such finance charge if payment is received after the termination of such time period. If no such time period is provided, the creditor shall disclose such fact.

(2) The method of determining the balance upon which a finance charge will be imposed.

(3) The method of determining the amount of the finance charge, including any minimum or fixed amount imposed as a finance charge.

(4) Where one or more periodic rates may be used to compute the finance charge, each such rate, the range of balances to which it is applicable, and the corresponding nominal annual percentage rate determined by multiplying the periodic rate by the number of periods in a year.

(5) Identification of other charges which may be imposed as part of the plan, and their method of computation, in accordance with regulations of the Board.

(6) In cases where the credit is or will be secured, a statement that a security interest has been or will be taken in (A) the property purchased as part of the credit transaction, or (B) property not purchased as part of the credit transaction identified by item or type.

(7) A statement, in a form prescribed by regulations of the Board of the protection provided by sections 1666 and 1666i of this title to an obligor and the creditor's responsibilities under sections 1666a and 1666i of this title. With respect to one billing cycle per calendar year, at intervals of not less than six months or more than eighteen months, the creditor shall transmit such statement to each obligor to whom the creditor is required to transmit a statement pursuant to subsection (b) of this section for such billing cycle.

(8) In the case of any account under an open end consumer credit plan which provides for any extension of credit which is secured by the consumer's principal dwelling, any information which—

(A) is required to be disclosed under section 1637a(a) of this title; and

(B) the Board determines is not described in any other paragraph of this subsection.

#### (b) Statement required with each billing cycle

The creditor of any account under an open end consumer credit plan shall transmit to the obli-

gor, for each billing cycle at the end of which there is an outstanding balance in that account or with respect to which a finance charge is imposed, a statement setting forth each of the following items to the extent applicable:

(1) The outstanding balance in the account at the beginning of the statement period.

(2) The amount and date of each extension of credit during the period, and a brief identification, on or accompanying the statement of each extension of credit in a form prescribed by the Board sufficient to enable the obligor either to identify the transaction or to relate it to copies of sales vouchers or similar instruments previously furnished, except that a creditor's failure to disclose such information in accordance with this paragraph shall not be deemed a failure to comply with this part or this subchapter if (A) the creditor maintains procedures reasonably adapted to procure and provide such information, and (B) the creditor responds to and treats any inquiry for clarification or documentation as a billing error and an erroneously billed amount under section 1666 of this title. In lieu of complying with the requirements of the previous sentence, in the case of any transaction in which the creditor and seller are the same person, as defined by the Board, and such person's open end credit plan has fewer than 15,000 accounts, the creditor may elect to provide only the amount and date of each extension of credit during the period and the seller's name and location where the transaction took place if (A) a brief identification of the transaction has been previously furnished, and (B) the creditor responds to and treats any inquiry for clarification or documentation as a billing error and an erroneously billed amount under section 1666 of this title.

(3) The total amount credited to the account during the period.

(4) The amount of any finance charge added to the account during the period, itemized to show the amounts, if any, due to the application of percentage rates and the amount, if any, imposed as a minimum or fixed charge.

(5) Where one or more periodic rates may be used to compute the finance charge, each such rate, the range of balances to which it is applicable, and, unless the annual percentage rate (determined under section 1606(a)(2) of this title) is required to be disclosed pursuant to paragraph (6), the corresponding nominal annual percentage rate determined by multiplying the periodic rate by the number of periods in a year.

(6) Where the total finance charge exceeds 50 cents for a monthly or longer billing cycle, or the pro rata part of 50 cents for a billing cycle shorter than monthly, the total finance charge expressed as an annual percentage rate (determined under section 1606(a)(2) of this title), except that if the finance charge is the sum of two or more products of a rate times a portion of the balance, the creditor may, in lieu of disclosing a single rate for the total charge, disclose each such rate expressed as an annual percentage rate, and the part of the balance to which it is applicable.

(7) The balance on which the finance charge was computed and a statement of how the bal-

ance was determined. If the balance is determined without first deducting all credits during the period, that fact and the amount of such payments shall also be disclosed.

(8) The outstanding balance in the account at the end of the period.

(9) The date by which or the period (if any) within which, payment must be made to avoid additional finance charges, except that the creditor may, at his election and without disclosure, impose no such additional finance charge if payment is received after such date or the termination of such period.

(10) The address to be used by the creditor for the purpose of receiving billing inquiries from the obligor.

**(c) Disclosure in credit and charge card applications and solicitations**

**(1) Direct mail applications and solicitations**

**(A) Information in tabular format**

Any application to open a credit card account for any person under an open end consumer credit plan, or a solicitation to open such an account without requiring an application, that is mailed to consumers shall disclose the following information, subject to subsection (e) of this section and section 1632(c) of this title:

**(i) Annual percentage rates**

(I) Each annual percentage rate applicable to extensions of credit under such credit plan.

(II) Where an extension of credit is subject to a variable rate, the fact that the rate is variable, the annual percentage rate in effect at the time of the mailing, and how the rate is determined.

(III) Where more than one rate applies, the range of balances to which each rate applies.

**(ii) Annual and other fees**

(I) Any annual fee, other periodic fee, or membership fee imposed for the issuance or availability of a credit card, including any account maintenance fee or other charge imposed based on activity or inactivity for the account during the billing cycle.

(II) Any minimum finance charge imposed for each period during which any extension of credit which is subject to a finance charge is outstanding.

(III) Any transaction charge imposed in connection with use of the card to purchase goods or services.

**(iii) Grace period**

(I) The date by which or the period within which any credit extended under such credit plan for purchases of goods or services must be repaid to avoid incurring a finance charge, and, if no such period is offered, such fact shall be clearly stated.

(II) If the length of such "grace period" varies, the card issuer may disclose the range of days in the grace period, the minimum number of days in the grace period, or the average number of days in the grace period, if the disclosure is identified as such.

**(iv) Balance calculation method**

(I) The name of the balance calculation method used in determining the balance on which the finance charge is computed if the method used has been defined by the Board, or a detailed explanation of the balance calculation method used if the method has not been so defined.

(II) In prescribing regulations to carry out this clause, the Board shall define and name not more than the 5 balance calculation methods determined by the Board to be the most commonly used methods.

**(B) Other information**

In addition to the information required to be disclosed under subparagraph (A), each application or solicitation to which such subparagraph applies shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following information, subject to subsections (e) and (f) of this section:

**(i) Cash advance fee**

Any fee imposed for an extension of credit in the form of cash.

**(ii) Late fee**

Any fee imposed for a late payment.

**(iii) Over-the-limit fee**

Any fee imposed in connection with an extension of credit in excess of the amount of credit authorized to be extended with respect to such account.

**(2) Telephone solicitations****(A) In general**

In any telephone solicitation to open a credit card account for any person under an open end consumer credit plan, the person making the solicitation shall orally disclose the information described in paragraph (1)(A).

**(B) Exception**

Subparagraph (A) shall not apply to any telephone solicitation if—

(i) the credit card issuer—

(I) does not impose any fee described in paragraph (1)(A)(ii)(I); or

(II) does not impose any fee in connection with telephone solicitations unless the consumer signifies acceptance by using the card;

(ii) the card issuer discloses clearly and conspicuously in writing the information described in paragraph (1) within 30 days after the consumer requests the card, but in no event later than the date of delivery of the card; and

(iii) the card issuer discloses clearly and conspicuously that the consumer is not obligated to accept the card or account and the consumer will not be obligated to pay any of the fees or charges disclosed unless the consumer elects to accept the card or account by using the card.

**(3) Applications and solicitations by other means****(A) In general**

Any application to open a credit card account for any person under an open end con-

sumer credit plan, and any solicitation to open such an account without requiring an application, that is made available to the public or contained in catalogs, magazines, or other publications shall meet the disclosure requirements of subparagraph (B), (C), or (D).

**(B) Specific information**

An application or solicitation described in subparagraph (A) meets the requirement of this subparagraph if such application or solicitation contains—

(i) the information—

(I) described in paragraph (1)(A) in the form required under section 1632(c) of this title, subject to subsection (e) of this section, and

(II) described in paragraph (1)(B) in a clear and conspicuous form, subject to subsections (e) and (f) of this section;

(ii) a statement, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, that—

(I) the information is accurate as of the date the application or solicitation was printed;

(II) the information contained in the application or solicitation is subject to change after such date; and

(III) the applicant should contact the creditor for information on any change in the information contained in the application or solicitation since it was printed;

(iii) a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the date the application or solicitation was printed; and

(iv) a disclosure, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, of a toll free telephone number or a mailing address at which the applicant may contact the creditor to obtain any change in the information provided in the application or solicitation since it was printed.

**(C) General information without any specific term**

An application or solicitation described in subparagraph (A) meets the requirement of this subparagraph if such application or solicitation—

(i) contains a statement, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, that—

(I) there are costs associated with the use of credit cards; and

(II) the applicant may contact the creditor to request disclosure of specific information of such costs by calling a toll free telephone number or by writing to an address, specified in the application;

(ii) contains a disclosure, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, of a toll free telephone number and a mailing address at which the applicant may contact the creditor to obtain such information; and

(iii) does not contain any of the items described in paragraph (1).

**(D) Applications or solicitations containing subsection (a) disclosures**

An application or solicitation meets the requirement of this subparagraph if it contains, or is accompanied by—

(i) the disclosures required by paragraphs (1) through (6) of subsection (a) of this section;

(ii) the disclosures required by subparagraphs (A) and (B) of paragraph (1) of this subsection included clearly and conspicuously<sup>1</sup> (except that the provisions of section 1632(c) of this title shall not apply); and

(iii) a toll free telephone number or a mailing address at which the applicant may contact the creditor to obtain any change in the information provided.

**(E) Prompt response to information requests**

Upon receipt of a request for any of the information referred to in subparagraph (B), (C), or (D), the card issuer or the agent of such issuer shall promptly disclose all of the information described in paragraph (1).

**(4) Charge card applications and solicitations**

**(A) In general**

Any application or solicitation to open a charge card account shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following information in the form required by section 1632(c) of this title, subject to subsection (e) of this section:

(i) Any annual fee, other periodic fee, or membership fee imposed for the issuance or availability of the charge card, including any account maintenance fee or other charge imposed based on activity or inactivity for the account during the billing cycle.

(ii) Any transaction charge imposed in connection with use of the card to purchase goods or services.

(iii) A statement that charges incurred by use of the charge card are due and payable upon receipt of a periodic statement rendered for such charge card account.

**(B) Other information**

In addition to the information required to be disclosed under subparagraph (A), each written application or solicitation to which such subparagraph applies shall disclose clearly and conspicuously the following information, subject to subsections (e) and (f) of this section:

**(i) Cash advance fee**

Any fee imposed for an extension of credit in the form of cash.

**(ii) Late fee**

Any fee imposed for a late payment.

**(iii) Over-the-limit fee**

Any fee imposed in connection with an extension of credit in excess of the amount

of credit authorized to be extended with respect to such account.

**(C) Applications and solicitations by other means**

Any application to open a charge card account, and any solicitation to open such an account without requiring an application, that is made available to the public or contained in catalogs, magazines, or other publications shall contain—

(i) the information—

(I) described in subparagraph (A) in the form required under section 1632(c) of this title, subject to subsection (e) of this section, and

(II) described in subparagraph (B) in a clear and conspicuous form, subject to subsections (e) and (f) of this section;

(ii) a statement, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, that—

(I) the information is accurate as of the date the application or solicitation was printed;

(II) the information contained in the application or solicitation is subject to change after such date; and

(III) the applicant should contact the creditor for information on any change in the information contained in the application or solicitation since it was printed;

(iii) a clear and conspicuous disclosure of the date the application or solicitation was printed; and

(iv) a disclosure, in a conspicuous and prominent location on the application or solicitation, of a toll free telephone number or a mailing address at which the applicant may contact the creditor to obtain any change in the information provided in the application or solicitation since it was printed.

**(D) Issuers of charge cards which provide access to open end consumer credit plans**

If a charge card permits the card holder to receive an extension of credit under an open end consumer credit plan, which is not maintained by the charge card issuer, the charge card issuer may provide the information described in subparagraphs (A) and (B) in the form required by such subparagraphs in lieu of the information required to be provided under paragraph (1), (2), or (3) with respect to any credit extended under such plan, if the charge card issuer discloses clearly and conspicuously to the consumer in the application or solicitation that—

(i) the charge card issuer will make an independent decision as to whether to issue the card;

(ii) the charge card may arrive before the decision is made with respect to an extension of credit under an open end consumer credit plan; and

(iii) approval by the charge card issuer does not constitute approval by the issuer of the extension of credit.

The information required to be disclosed under paragraph (1) shall be provided to the

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "conspicuously".

charge card holder by the creditor which maintains such open end consumer credit plan before the first extension of credit under such plan.

**(E) Charge card defined**

For the purposes of this subsection, the term “charge card” means a card, plate, or other single credit device that may be used from time to time to obtain credit which is not subject to a finance charge.

**(5) Regulatory authority of the Board**

The Board may, by regulation, require the disclosure of information in addition to that otherwise required by this subsection or subsection (d) of this section, and modify any disclosure of information required by this subsection or subsection (d) of this section, in any application to open a credit card account for any person under an open end consumer credit plan or any application to open a charge card account for any person, or a solicitation to open any such account without requiring an application, if the Board determines that such action is necessary to carry out the purposes of, or prevent evasions of, any paragraph of this subsection.

**(d) Disclosure prior to renewal**

**(1) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (2), a card issuer that imposes any fee described in subsection (c)(1)(A)(ii)(I) or (c)(4)(A)(i) of this section shall transmit to a consumer at least 30 days prior to the scheduled renewal date of the consumer's credit or charge card account a clear and conspicuous disclosure of—

(A) the date by which, the month by which, or the billing period at the close of which, the account will expire if not renewed;

(B) the information described in subsection (c)(1)(A) or (c)(4)(A) of this section that would apply if the account were renewed, subject to subsection (e) of this section; and

(C) the method by which the consumer may terminate continued credit availability under the account.

**(2) Special rule for certain disclosures**

**(A) In general**

The disclosures required by this subsection may be provided—

(i) prior to posting a fee described in subsection (c)(1)(A)(ii)(I) or (c)(4)(A)(i) of this section to the account, or

(ii) with the periodic billing statement first disclosing that the fee has been posted to the account.

**(B) Limitation on use of special rule**

Disclosures may be provided under subparagraph (A) only if—

(i) the consumer is given a 30-day period to avoid payment of the fee or to have the fee recredited to the account in any case where the consumer does not wish to continue the availability of the credit; and

(ii) the consumer is permitted to use the card during such period without incurring an obligation to pay such fee.

**(3) Short-term renewals**

The Board may by regulation provide for fewer disclosures than are required by paragraph (1) in the case of an account which is renewable for a period of less than 6 months.

**(e) Other rules for disclosures under subsections (c) and (d)**

**(1) Fees determined on the basis of a percentage**

If the amount of any fee required to be disclosed under subsection (c) or (d) of this section is determined on the basis of a percentage of another amount, the percentage used in making such determination and the identification of the amount against which such percentage is applied shall be disclosed in lieu of the amount of such fee.

**(2) Disclosure only of fees actually imposed**

If a credit or charge card issuer does not impose any fee required to be disclosed under any provision of subsection (c) or (d) of this section, such provision shall not apply with respect to such issuer.

**(f) Disclosure of range of certain fees which vary by State allowed**

If the amount of any fee required to be disclosed by a credit or charge card issuer under paragraph (1)(B), (3)(B)(i)(II), (4)(B), or (4)(C)(i)(II) of subsection (c) of this section varies from State to State, the card issuer may disclose the range of such fees for purposes of subsection (c) of this section in lieu of the amount for each applicable State, if such disclosure includes a statement that the amount of such fee varies from State to State.

**(g) Insurance in connection with certain open end credit card plans**

**(1) Change in insurance carrier**

Whenever a card issuer that offers any guarantee or insurance for repayment of all or part of the outstanding balance of an open end credit card plan proposes to change the person providing that guarantee or insurance, the card issuer shall send each insured consumer written notice of the proposed change not less than 30 days prior to the change, including notice of any increase in the rate or substantial decrease in coverage or service which will result from such change. Such notice may be included on or with the monthly statement provided to the consumer prior to the month in which the proposed change would take effect.

**(2) Notice of new insurance coverage**

In any case in which a proposed change described in paragraph (1) occurs, the insured consumer shall be given the name and address of the new guarantor or insurer and a copy of the policy or group certificate containing the basic terms and conditions, including the premium rate to be charged.

**(3) Right to discontinue guarantee or insurance**

The notices required under paragraphs (1) and (2) shall each include a statement that the consumer has the option to discontinue the insurance or guarantee.

**(4) No preemption of State law**

No provision of this subsection shall be construed as superseding any provision of State law which is applicable to the regulation of insurance.

**(5) Board definition of substantial decrease in coverage or service**

The Board shall define, in regulations, what constitutes a “substantial decrease in coverage or service” for purposes of paragraph (1).

(Pub. L. 90–321, title I, § 127, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 153; Pub. L. 93–495, title III, §§ 304, 305, title IV, §§ 411, 415, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1511, 1519, 1521; Pub. L. 96–221, title VI, § 613(a)–(e), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 176, 177; Pub. L. 100–583, §§ 2(a), 6, Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2960, 2968; Pub. L. 100–709, § 2(b), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4729.)

## AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 100–709 added par. (8).  
Subsecs. (c) to (f). Pub. L. 100–583, § 2(a), added subsecs. (c) to (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 100–583, § 6, added subsec. (g).

1980—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(a)(1), inserted provisions requiring the creditor to disclose that no time period is provided.

Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (6) as (5) and inserted provisions relating to identification of other charges, and regulations by the Board. Former par. (5), relating to elective rights of the creditor, was struck out.

Subsec. (a)(6). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(a)(2), (3), redesignated par. (7) as (6) and revised nomenclature and expanded statement requirements. Former par. (6) redesignated (5).

Subsec. (a)(7), (8). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(a)(2), (d), redesignated par. (8) as (7) and substituted provisions relating to one billing cycle per calendar year, for provisions relating to each of two billing cycles per year. Former par. (7) redesignated (6).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(b), inserted provisions relating to failure of the creditor to disclose information in accordance with this paragraph, and made minor changes in phraseology.

Subsec. (b)(7) to (11). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(c), struck out par. (7) which related to elective rights of the creditor, and redesignated pars. (8) to (11) as (7) to (10), respectively.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96–221, § 613(e), struck out subsec. (c) which related to the time for making disclosures with respect to open end consumer credit plans having an outstanding balance of more than \$1 at or after the close of the first full billing cycle.

1974—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 93–495, § 415(1), inserted exception relating to nonimposition of a finance charge at the election of the creditor and without disclosure.

Subsec. (a)(8). Pub. L. 93–495, § 304(a), added par. (8).

Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 93–495, § 411, substituted provisions requiring a brief identification on or accompanying the statement of credit extension sufficient to enable the obligor to identify the transaction or relate it to copies of sales vouchers or similar instruments previously furnished, for provisions requiring for purchases a brief identification, unless previously furnished, of the goods or services purchased.

Subsec. (b)(10). Pub. L. 93–495, § 415(2), inserted exception relating to nonimposition of additional finance charge at the election of the creditor and without disclosure.

Subsec. (b)(11). Pub. L. 93–495, § 305, added par. (11).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93–495, § 304(b), substituted provisions relating to disclosure requirements in a notice mailed or delivered to the obligor not later than the time of mailing the next statement required by subsec. (b) of this section, for provisions relating to disclosure requirements in a notice mailed or delivered to the obligor not later than thirty days after July 1, 1969.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1988 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendments by Pub. L. 100–709, see Regulations; Effective Date note below.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96–221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96–221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

For effective date of amendment by sections 304 and 305 of Pub. L. 93–495, see section 308 of Pub. L. 93–495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1666 of this title.

For effective date of amendment by section 411 of Pub. L. 93–495, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93–495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

Amendment by section 415 of Pub. L. 93–495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93–495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

## REGULATIONS; EFFECTIVE DATE

For provisions relating to promulgation of regulations to implement amendment by Pub. L. 100–709, and effective date of such amendment in connection with those regulations, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100–709, set out as a note under section 1637a of this title.

Section 7 of Pub. L. 100–583 provided that: “Any regulation required to be prescribed by the Board under the amendments made by section 2 [amending this section and section 1632 of this title] shall—

“(1) take effect not later than the end of the 150-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 3, 1988]; and

“(2) apply only with respect to applications, solicitations, and other material distributed after the end of the 150-day period beginning after the end of the period referred to in paragraph (1), except that—

“(A) in the case of applications and solicitations subject to paragraph (3) or (4)(C) of section 127(c) of the Truth in Lending Act [15 U.S.C. 1637(c)(3), (4)(C)] (as added by section 2), such period shall be 240 days; and

“(B) any card issuer may, at its option, comply with the requirements of the amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 1988 Amendment note under section 1601 of this title] prior to the applicable effective date, in which case the amendments made by this Act shall be fully applicable to such card issuer.”

## REPORTS TO CONGRESS

Section 8 of Pub. L. 100–583 provided that: “Not later than 1 year after the regulations prescribed under section 7 of this Act [set out as a note above] become effective and annually thereafter, the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall transmit to the Congress a report containing an assessment by the Board of the profitability of credit card operations of depository institutions, including an analysis of any impact of the amendments made by this Act [see Short Title of 1988 Amendment note under section 1601 of this title] on such profitability.”

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1602, 1610, 1632, 1640, 1643, 1646, 1666 of this title.

**§ 1637a. Disclosure requirements for open end consumer credit plans secured by consumer's principal dwelling**

**(a) Application disclosures**

In the case of any open end consumer credit plan which provides for any extension of credit which is secured by the consumer's principal dwelling, the creditor shall make the following disclosures in accordance with subsection (b) of this section:

**(1) Fixed annual percentage rate**

Each annual percentage rate imposed in connection with extensions of credit under the plan and a statement that such rate does not include costs other than interest.

**(2) Variable percentage rate**

In the case of a plan which provides for variable rates of interest on credit extended under the plan—

(A) a description of the manner in which such rate will be computed and a statement that such rate does not include costs other than interest;

(B) a description of the manner in which any changes in the annual percentage rate will be made, including—

(i) any negative amortization and interest rate carryover;

(ii) the timing of any such changes;

(iii) any index or margin to which such changes in the rate are related; and

(iv) a source of information about any such index;

(C) if an initial annual percentage rate is offered which is not based on an index—

(i) a statement of such rate and the period of time such initial rate will be in effect; and

(ii) a statement that such rate does not include costs other than interest;

(D) a statement that the consumer should ask about the current index value and interest rate;

(E) a statement of the maximum amount by which the annual percentage rate may change in any 1-year period or a statement that no such limit exists;

(F) a statement of the maximum annual percentage rate that may be imposed at any time under the plan;

(G) subject to subsection (b)(3) of this section, a table, based on a \$10,000 extension of credit, showing how the annual percentage rate and the minimum periodic payment amount under each repayment option of the plan would have been affected during the preceding 15-year period by changes in any index used to compute such rate;

(H) a statement of—

(i) the maximum annual percentage rate which may be imposed under each repayment option of the plan;

(ii) the minimum amount of any periodic payment which may be required, based on a \$10,000 outstanding balance, under each such option when such maximum annual percentage rate is in effect; and

(iii) the earliest date by which such maximum annual interest rate may be imposed; and

(I) a statement that interest rate information will be provided on or with each periodic statement.

**(3) Other fees imposed by the creditor**

An itemization of any fees imposed by the creditor in connection with the availability or use of credit under such plan, including annual fees, application fees, transaction fees, and closing costs (including costs commonly described as "points"), and the time when such fees are payable.

**(4) Estimates of fees which may be imposed by third parties**

**(A) Aggregate amount**

An estimate, based on the creditor's experience with such plans and stated as a single amount or as a reasonable range, of the aggregate amount of additional fees that may be imposed by third parties (such as governmental authorities, appraisers, and attorneys) in connection with opening an account under the plan.

**(B) Statement of availability**

A statement that the consumer may ask the creditor for a good faith estimate by the creditor of the fees that may be imposed by third parties.

**(5) Statement of risk of loss of dwelling**

A statement that—

(A) any extension of credit under the plan is secured by the consumer's dwelling; and

(B) in the event of any default, the consumer risks the loss of the dwelling.

**(6) Conditions to which disclosed terms are subject**

**(A) Period during which such terms are available**

A clear and conspicuous statement—

(i) of the time by which an application must be submitted to obtain the terms disclosed; or

(ii) if applicable, that the terms are subject to change.

**(B) Right of refusal if certain terms change**

A statement that—

(i) the consumer may elect not to enter into an agreement to open an account under the plan if any term changes (other than a change contemplated by a variable feature of the plan) before any such agreement is final; and

(ii) if the consumer makes an election described in clause (i), the consumer is entitled to a refund of all fees paid in connection with the application.

**(C) Retention of information**

A statement that the consumer should make or otherwise retain a copy of information disclosed under this subparagraph.

**(7) Rights of creditor with respect to extensions of credit**

A statement that—

(A) under certain conditions, the creditor may terminate any account under the plan and require immediate repayment of any

outstanding balance, prohibit any additional extension of credit to the account, or reduce the credit limit applicable to the account; and

(B) the consumer may receive, upon request, more specific information about the conditions under which the creditor may take any action described in subparagraph (A).

**(8) Repayment options and minimum periodic payments**

The repayment options under the plan, including—

(A) if applicable, any differences in repayment options with regard to—

- (i) any period during which additional extensions of credit may be obtained; and
- (ii) any period during which repayment is required to be made and no additional extensions of credit may be obtained;

(B) the length of any repayment period, including any differences in the length of any repayment period with regard to the periods described in clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (A); and

(C) an explanation of how the amount of any minimum monthly or periodic payment will be determined under each such option, including any differences in the determination of any such amount with regard to the periods described in clauses (i) and (ii) of subparagraph (A).

**(9) Example of minimum payments and maximum repayment period**

An example, based on a \$10,000 outstanding balance and the interest rate (other than a rate not based on the index under the plan) which is, or was recently, in effect under such plan, showing the minimum monthly or periodic payment, and the time it would take to repay the entire \$10,000 if the consumer paid only the minimum periodic payments and obtained no additional extensions of credit.

**(10) Statement concerning balloon payments**

If, under any repayment option of the plan, the payment of not more than the minimum periodic payments required under such option over the length of the repayment period—

(A) would not repay any of the principal balance; or

(B) would repay less than the outstanding balance by the end of such period,

as the case may be, a statement of such fact, including an explicit statement that at the end of such repayment period a balloon payment (as defined in section 1665b(f) of this title) would result which would be required to be paid in full at that time.

**(11) Negative amortization**

If applicable, a statement that—

(A) any limitation in the plan on the amount of any increase in the minimum payments may result in negative amortization;

(B) negative amortization increases the outstanding principal balance of the account; and

(C) negative amortization reduces the consumer's equity in the consumer's dwelling.

**(12) Limitations and minimum amount requirements on extensions of credit**

**(A) Number and dollar amount limitations**

Any limitation contained in the plan on the number of extensions of credit and the amount of credit which may be obtained during any month or other defined time period.

**(B) Minimum balance and other transaction amount requirements**

Any requirement which establishes a minimum amount for—

- (i) the initial extension of credit to an account under the plan;
- (ii) any subsequent extension of credit to an account under the plan; or
- (iii) any outstanding balance of an account under the plan.

**(13) Statement regarding consultation of tax advisor**

A statement that the consumer should consult a tax advisor regarding the deductibility of interest and charges under the plan.

**(14) Disclosure requirements established by Board**

Any other term which the Board requires, in regulations, to be disclosed.

**(b) Time and form of disclosures**

**(1) Time of disclosure**

**(A) In general**

The disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section with respect to any open end consumer credit plan which provides for any extension of credit which is secured by the consumer's principal dwelling and the pamphlet required under subsection (e) of this section shall be provided to any consumer at the time the creditor distributes an application to establish an account under such plan to such consumer.

**(B) Telephone, publications, and third party applications**

In the case of telephone applications, applications contained in magazines or other publications, or applications provided by a third party, the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section and the pamphlet required under subsection (e) of this section shall be provided by the creditor before the end of the 3-day period beginning on the date the creditor receives a completed application from a consumer.

**(2) Form**

**(A) In general**

Except as provided in paragraph (1)(B), the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section shall be provided on or with any application to establish an account under an open end consumer credit plan which provides for any extension of credit which is secured by the consumer's principal dwelling.

**(B) Segregation of required disclosures from other information**

The disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section shall be conspicuously seg-

regated from all other terms, data, or additional information provided in connection with the application, either by grouping the disclosures separately on the application form or by providing the disclosures on a separate form, in accordance with regulations of the Board.

**(C) Precedence of certain information**

The disclosures required by paragraphs (5), (6), and (7) of subsection (a) of this section shall precede all of the other required disclosures.

**(D) Special provision relating to variable interest rate information**

Whether or not the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section are provided on the application form, the variable rate information described in subsection (a)(2) of this section may be provided separately from the other information required to be disclosed.

**(3) Requirement for historical table**

In preparing the table required under subsection (a)(2)(G) of this section, the creditor shall consistently select one rate of interest for each year and the manner of selecting the rate from year to year shall be consistent with the plan.

**(c) Third party applications**

In the case of an application to open an account under any open end consumer credit plan described in subsection (a) of this section which is provided to a consumer by any person other than the creditor—

(1) such person shall provide such consumer with—

(A) the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section with respect to such plan, in accordance with subsection (b) of this section; and

(B) the pamphlet required under subsection (e) of this section; or

(2) if such person cannot provide specific terms about the plan because specific information about the plan terms is not available, no nonrefundable fee may be imposed in connection with such application before the end of the 3-day period beginning on the date the consumer receives the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section with respect to the application.

**(d) "Principal dwelling" defined**

For purposes of this section and sections 1647 and 1665b of this title, the term "principal dwelling" includes any second or vacation home of the consumer.

**(e) Pamphlet**

In addition to the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section with respect to an application to open an account under any open end consumer credit plan described in such subsection, the creditor or other person providing such disclosures to the consumer shall provide—

(1) a pamphlet published by the Board pursuant to section 4 of the Home Equity Consumer Protection Act of 1988; or

(2) any pamphlet which provides substantially similar information to the information

described in such section, as determined by the Board.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §127A, as added Pub. L. 100-709, §2(a), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4725.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 4 of the Home Equity Consumer Protection Act of 1988, referred to in subsec. (e)(1), is section 4 of Pub. L. 100-709, which is set out as a note below.

EFFECTIVE DATE

For effective date of section, see Regulations; Effective Date note below.

REGULATIONS; EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 7 of Pub. L. 100-709 provided that:

"(a) REGULATIONS.—Before the end of the 60-day period beginning on the date of the enactment of this Act [Nov. 23, 1988], the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall prescribe such regulations as may be necessary to carry out the proposes [sic] of the amendments made by this Act [enacting this section and sections 1647 and 1665b of this title, amending sections 1632 and 1637 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as notes under this section and section 1601 of this title].

"(b) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The amendments made by this Act, and the regulations prescribed pursuant to subsection (a) with respect to such amendments, shall apply to—

"(1) any agreement to open an account under an open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by a consumer's principal dwelling which is entered into after the end of the 5-month period beginning on the date on which the regulations prescribed under subsection (a) become final; and

"(2) any application to open such an account which is distributed by, or received by a creditor, after the end of such 5-month period.

"(c) VOLUNTARY COMPLIANCE.—Notwithstanding subsection (b), any creditor may comply with the amendments made by this Act, in accordance with the regulations prescribed by the Board, before the effective date established under such subsection."

CONSUMER EDUCATION

Section 4 of Pub. L. 100-709 provided that: "The Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall develop and prepare a pamphlet for distribution to consumers which contains—

"(1) a general description of open end consumer credit plans secured by the consumer's principal dwelling and the terms and conditions under which such loans are generally extended; and

"(2) a discussion of the potential advantages and disadvantages of such plans, including how to compare among home equity plans and between home equity and closed end credit plans."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1632, 1647, 1665b of this title.

**§ 1638. Transactions other than under an open end credit plan**

**(a) Required disclosures by creditor**

For each consumer credit transaction other than under an open end credit plan, the creditor shall disclose each of the following items, to the extent applicable:

(1) The identity of the creditor required to make disclosure.

(2)(A) The "amount financed", using that term, which shall be the amount of credit of

which the consumer has actual use. This amount shall be computed as follows, but the computations need not be disclosed and shall not be disclosed with the disclosures conspicuously segregated in accordance with subsection (b)(1) of this section:

(i) take the principal amount of the loan or the cash price less downpayment and trade-in;

(ii) add any charges which are not part of the finance charge or of the principal amount of the loan and which are financed by the consumer, including the cost of any items excluded from the finance charge pursuant to section 1605 of this title; and

(iii) subtract any charges which are part of the finance charge but which will be paid by the consumer before or at the time of the consummation of the transaction, or have been withheld from the proceeds of the credit.

(B) In conjunction with the disclosure of the amount financed, a creditor shall provide a statement of the consumer's right to obtain, upon a written request, a written itemization of the amount financed. The statement shall include spaces for a "yes" and "no" indication to be initialed by the consumer to indicate whether the consumer wants a written itemization of the amount financed. Upon receiving an affirmative indication, the creditor shall provide, at the time other disclosures are required to be furnished, a written itemization of the amount financed. For the purposes of this subparagraph, "itemization of the amount financed" means a disclosure of the following items, to the extent applicable:

(i) the amount that is or will be paid directly to the consumer;

(ii) the amount that is or will be credited to the consumer's account to discharge obligations owed to the creditor;

(iii) each amount that is or will be paid to third persons by the creditor on the consumer's behalf, together with an identification of or reference to the third person; and

(iv) the total amount of any charges described in the preceding subparagraph (A)(iii).

(3) The "finance charge", not itemized, using that term.

(4) The finance charge expressed as an "annual percentage rate", using that term. This shall not be required if the amount financed does not exceed \$75 and the finance charge does not exceed \$5, or if the amount financed exceeds \$75 and the finance charge does not exceed \$7.50.

(5) The sum of the amount financed and the finance charge, which shall be termed the "total of payments".

(6) The number, amount, and due dates or period of payments scheduled to repay the total of payments.

(7) In a sale of property or services in which the seller is the creditor required to disclose pursuant to section 1631(b) of this title, the "total sale price", using that term, which shall be the total of the cash price of the property or services, additional charges, and the finance charge.

(8) Descriptive explanations of the terms "amount financed", "finance charge", "annual percentage rate", "total of payments", and "total sale price" as specified by the Board. The descriptive explanation of "total sale price" shall include reference to the amount of the downpayment.

(9) Where the credit is secured, a statement that a security interest has been taken in (A) the property which is purchased as part of the credit transaction, or (B) property not purchased as part of the credit transaction identified by item or type.

(10) Any dollar charge or percentage amount which may be imposed by a creditor solely on account of a late payment, other than a deferral or extension charge.

(11) A statement indicating whether or not the consumer is entitled to a rebate of any finance charge upon refinancing or prepayment in full pursuant to acceleration or otherwise, if the obligation involves a precomputed finance charge. A statement indicating whether or not a penalty will be imposed in those same circumstances if the obligation involves a finance charge computed from time to time by application of a rate to the unpaid principal balance.

(12) A statement that the consumer should refer to the appropriate contract document for any information such document provides about nonpayment, default, the right to accelerate the maturity of the debt, and prepayment rebates and penalties.

(13) In any residential mortgage transaction, a statement indicating whether a subsequent purchaser or assignee of the consumer may assume the debt obligation on its original terms and conditions.

**(b) Form and timing of disclosures; residential mortgage transaction requirements**

(1) Except as otherwise provided in this part, the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section shall be made before the credit is extended. Except for the disclosures required by subsection (a)(1) of this section, all disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section and any disclosure provided for in subsection (b), (c), or (d) of section 1605 of this title shall be conspicuously segregated from all other terms, data, or information provided in connection with a transaction, including any computations or itemization.

(2) In the case of a residential mortgage transaction, as defined in section 1602(w) of this title, which is also subject to the Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act [12 U.S.C. 2601 et seq.], good faith estimates of the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section shall be made in accordance with regulations of the Board under section 1631(c) of this title before the credit is extended, or shall be delivered or placed in the mail not later than three business days after the creditor receives the consumer's written application, which ever is earlier. If the disclosure statement furnished within three days of the written application contains an annual percentage rate which is subsequently rendered inaccurate within the meaning of section 1606(c) of this title, the creditor shall furnish an-

other statement at the time of settlement or consummation.

**(c) Timing of disclosures on unsolicited mailed or telephone purchase orders or loan requests**

(1) If a creditor receives a purchase order by mail or telephone without personal solicitation, and the cash price and the total sale price and the terms of financing, including the annual percentage rate, are set forth in the creditor's catalog or other printed material distributed to the public, then the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section may be made at any time not later than the date the first payment is due.

(2) If a creditor receives a request for a loan by mail or telephone without personal solicitation and the terms of financing, including the annual percentage rate for representative amounts of credit, are set forth in the creditor's printed material distributed to the public, or in the contract of loan or other printed material delivered to the obligor, then the disclosures required under subsection (a) of this section may be made at any time not later than the date the first payment is due.

**(d) Timing of disclosure in cases of an addition of a deferred payment price to an existing outstanding balance**

If a consumer credit sale is one of a series of consumer credit sales transactions made pursuant to an agreement providing for the addition of the deferred payment price of that sale to an existing outstanding balance, and the person to whom the credit is extended has approved in writing both the annual percentage rate or rates and the method of computing the finance charge or charges, and the creditor retains no security interest in any property as to which he has received payments aggregating the amount of the sales price including any finance charges attributable thereto, then the disclosure required under subsection (a) of this section for the particular sale may be made at any time not later than the date the first payment for that sale is due. For the purposes of this subsection, in the case of items purchased on different dates, the first purchased shall be deemed first paid for, and in the case of items purchased on the same date, the lowest price shall be deemed first paid for.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 128, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 155; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 614(a)-(c), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 178, 179.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(2), probably refers to the Real Estate Settlement Procedures Act of 1974, Pub. L. 93-533, Dec. 22, 1974, 88 Stat. 1724, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 27 (§2601 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2601 of Title 12 and Tables.

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221, § 614(a), substituted provisions setting forth required disclosures by the creditor for transactions other than under an open end credit plan, for provisions setting forth required disclosures by the creditor for sales not under open end credit plans.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-221, § 614(b), designated existing provisions as par. (1), inserted provisions relating to the conspicuous segregation of required disclosures, and struck out provisions authorizing the required information to be disclosed in the signed evidence of indebtedness, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-221, § 614(c), designated existing provisions as par. (1), substituted "total sale" for "deferred payment", and added par. (2).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1632, 1640 of this title.

**§ 1639. Requirements for certain mortgages**

**(a) Disclosures**

**(1) Specific disclosures**

In addition to other disclosures required under this subchapter, for each mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, the creditor shall provide the following disclosures in conspicuous type size:

(A) "You are not required to complete this agreement merely because you have received these disclosures or have signed a loan application."

(B) "If you obtain this loan, the lender will have a mortgage on your home. You could lose your home, and any money you have put into it, if you do not meet your obligations under the loan."

**(2) Annual percentage rate**

In addition to the disclosures required under paragraph (1), the creditor shall disclose—

(A) in the case of a credit transaction with a fixed rate of interest, the annual percentage rate and the amount of the regular monthly payment; or

(B) in the case of any other credit transaction, the annual percentage rate of the loan, the amount of the regular monthly payment, a statement that the interest rate and monthly payment may increase, and the amount of the maximum monthly payment, based on the maximum interest rate allowed pursuant to section 3806 of title 12.

**(b) Time of disclosures**

**(1) In general**

The disclosures required by this section shall be given not less than 3 business days prior to consummation of the transaction.

**(2) New disclosures required**

**(A) In general**

After providing the disclosures required by this section, a creditor may not change the terms of the extension of credit if such changes make the disclosures inaccurate, unless new disclosures are provided that meet the requirements of this section.

**(B) Telephone disclosure**

A creditor may provide new disclosures pursuant to subparagraph (A) by telephone, if—

(i) the change is initiated by the consumer; and

(ii) at the consummation of the transaction under which the credit is extended—

(I) the creditor provides to the consumer the new disclosures, in writing; and

(II) the creditor and consumer certify in writing that the new disclosures were provided by telephone, by not later than 3 days prior to the date of consummation of the transaction.

**(3) Modifications**

The Board may, if it finds that such action is necessary to permit homeowners to meet bona fide personal financial emergencies, prescribe regulations authorizing the modification or waiver of rights created under this subsection, to the extent and under the circumstances set forth in those regulations.

**(c) No Prepayment penalty****(1) In general****(A) Limitation on terms**

A mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title may not contain terms under which a consumer must pay a prepayment penalty for paying all or part of the principal before the date on which the principal is due.

**(B) Construction**

For purposes of this subsection, any method of computing a refund of unearned scheduled interest is a prepayment penalty if it is less favorable to the consumer than the actuarial method (as that term is defined in section 1615(d) of this title).

**(2) Exception**

Notwithstanding paragraph (1), a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title may contain a prepayment penalty (including terms calculating a refund by a method that is not prohibited under section 1615(b) of this title for the transaction in question) if—

(A) at the time the mortgage is consummated—

(i) the consumer is not liable for an amount of monthly indebtedness payments (including the amount of credit extended or to be extended under the transaction) that is greater than 50 percent of the monthly gross income of the consumer; and

(ii) the income and expenses of the consumer are verified by a financial statement signed by the consumer, by a credit report, and in the case of employment income, by payment records or by verification from the employer of the consumer (which verification may be in the form of a copy of a pay stub or other payment record supplied by the consumer);

(B) the penalty applies only to a prepayment made with amounts obtained by the

consumer by means other than a refinancing by the creditor under the mortgage, or an affiliate of that creditor;

(C) the penalty does not apply after the end of the 5-year period beginning on the date on which the mortgage is consummated; and

(D) the penalty is not prohibited under other applicable law.

**(d) Limitations after default**

A mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title may not provide for an interest rate applicable after default that is higher than the interest rate that applies before default. If the date of maturity of a mortgage referred to in subsection<sup>1</sup> 1602(aa) of this title is accelerated due to default and the consumer is entitled to a rebate of interest, that rebate shall be computed by any method that is not less favorable than the actuarial method (as that term is defined in section 1615(d) of this title).

**(e) No balloon payments**

A mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title having a term of less than 5 years may not include terms under which the aggregate amount of the regular periodic payments would not fully amortize the outstanding principal balance.

**(f) No negative amortization**

A mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title may not include terms under which the outstanding principal balance will increase at any time over the course of the loan because the regular periodic payments do not cover the full amount of interest due.

**(g) No prepaid payments**

A mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title may not include terms under which more than 2 periodic payments required under the loan are consolidated and paid in advance from the loan proceeds provided to the consumer.

**(h) Prohibition on extending credit without regard to payment ability of consumer**

A creditor shall not engage in a pattern or practice of extending credit to consumers under mortgages referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title based on the consumers' collateral without regard to the consumers' repayment ability, including the consumers' current and expected income, current obligations, and employment.

**(i) Requirements for payments under home improvement contracts**

A creditor shall not make a payment to a contractor under a home improvement contract from amounts extended as credit under a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title, other than—

(1) in the form of an instrument that is payable to the consumer or jointly to the consumer and the contractor; or

(2) at the election of the consumer, by a third party escrow agent in accordance with terms established in a written agreement signed by the consumer, the creditor, and the contractor before the date of payment.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "section".

**(j) Consequence of failure to comply**

Any mortgage that contains a provision prohibited by this section shall be deemed a failure to deliver the material disclosures required under this subchapter, for the purpose of section 1635 of this title.

**(k) "Affiliate" defined**

For purposes of this section, the term "affiliate" has the same meaning as in section 1841(k) of title 12.

**(l) Discretionary regulatory authority of Board****(1) Exemptions**

The Board may, by regulation or order, exempt specific mortgage products or categories of mortgages from any or all of the prohibitions specified in subsections (c) through (i) of this section, if the Board finds that the exemption—

(A) is in the interest of the borrowing public; and

(B) will apply only to products that maintain and strengthen home ownership and equity protection.

**(2) Prohibitions**

The Board, by regulation or order, shall prohibit acts or practices in connection with—

(A) mortgage loans that the Board finds to be unfair, deceptive, or designed to evade the provisions of this section; and

(B) refinancing of mortgage loans that the Board finds to be associated with abusive lending practices, or that are otherwise not in the interest of the borrower.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §129, as added Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §152(d), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2191.)

## PRIOR PROVISIONS

A prior section 1639, Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §129, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 156, related to consumer loans not under open end credit plans, prior to repeal by Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §614(d)(1), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 180. Repeal effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as an Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note under section 1602 of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1602, 1610, 1640 of this title.

**§ 1640. Civil liability****(a) Individual or class action for damages; amount of award; factors determining amount of award**

Except as otherwise provided in this section, any creditor who fails to comply with any requirement imposed under this part, including any requirement under section 1635 of this title, or part D or E of this subchapter with respect to any person is liable to such person in an amount equal to the sum of—

(1) any actual damage sustained by such person as a result of the failure;

(2)(A)(i) in the case of an individual action twice the amount of any finance charge in connection with the transaction, (ii) in the case of an individual action relating to a consumer lease under part E of this subchapter, 25 per centum of the total amount of monthly payments under the lease, except that the liability under this subparagraph shall not be less than \$100 nor greater than \$1,000, or (iii) in the case of an individual action relating to a credit transaction not under an open end credit plan that is secured by real property or a dwelling, not less than \$200 or greater than \$2,000; or

(B) in the case of a class action, such amount as the court may allow, except that as to each member of the class no minimum recovery shall be applicable, and the total recovery under this subparagraph in any class action or series of class actions arising out of the same failure to comply by the same creditor shall not be more than the lesser of \$500,000 or 1 per centum of the net worth of the creditor;

(3) in the case of any successful action to enforce the foregoing liability or in any action in which a person is determined to have a right of rescission under section 1635 of this title, the costs of the action, together with a reasonable attorney's fee as determined by the court; and

(4) in the case of a failure to comply with any requirement under section 1639 of this title, an amount equal to the sum of all finance charges and fees paid by the consumer, unless the creditor demonstrates that the failure to comply is not material.

In determining the amount of award in any class action, the court shall consider, among other relevant factors, the amount of any actual damages awarded, the frequency and persistence of failures of compliance by the creditor, the resources of the creditor, the number of persons adversely affected, and the extent to which the creditor's failure of compliance was intentional. In connection with the disclosures referred to in subsections (a) and (b) of section 1637 of this title, a creditor shall have a liability determined under paragraph (2) only for failing to comply with the requirements of section 1635 of this title, section 1637(a) of this title, or of paragraph (4), (5), (6), (7), (8), (9), or (10) of section 1637(b) of this title or for failing to comply with disclosure requirements under State law for any term or item which the Board has determined to be substantially the same in meaning under section 1610(a)(2) of this title as any of the terms or items referred to in section 1637(a) of this title or any of those paragraphs of section 1637(b) of this title. In connection with the disclosures referred to in subsection (c) or (d) of section 1637 of this title, a card issuer shall have a liability under this section only to a cardholder who pays a fee described in section 1637(c)(1)(A)(ii)(I) or section 1637(c)(4)(A)(i) of this title or who uses the credit card or charge card. In connection with the disclosures referred to in section 1638 of this title, a creditor shall have a liability determined under paragraph (2) only for failing to comply with the requirements of section 1635 of this title or of paragraph (2) (insofar as it re-

quires a disclosure of the “amount financed”), (3), (4), (5), (6), or (9) of section 1638(a) of this title, or for failing to comply with disclosure requirements under State law for any term which the Board has determined to be substantially the same in meaning under section 1610(a)(2) of this title as any of the terms referred to in any of those paragraphs of section 1638(a) of this title. With respect to any failure to make disclosures required under this part or part D or E of this subchapter, liability shall be imposed only upon the creditor required to make disclosure, except as provided in section 1641 of this title.

**(b) Correction of errors**

A creditor or assignee has no liability under this section or section 1607 of this title or section 1611 of this title for any failure to comply with any requirement imposed under this part or part E of this subchapter, if within sixty days after discovering an error, whether pursuant to a final written examination report or notice issued under section 1607(e)(1) of this title or through the creditor’s or assignee’s own procedures, and prior to the institution of an action under this section or the receipt of written notice of the error from the obligor, the creditor or assignee notifies the person concerned of the error and makes whatever adjustments in the appropriate account are necessary to assure that the person will not be required to pay an amount in excess of the charge actually disclosed, or the dollar equivalent of the annual percentage rate actually disclosed, whichever is lower.

**(c) Unintentional violations; bona fide errors**

A creditor or assignee may not be held liable in any action brought under this section or section 1635 of this title for a violation of this subchapter if the creditor or assignee shows by a preponderance of evidence that the violation was not intentional and resulted from a bona fide error notwithstanding the maintenance of procedures reasonably adapted to avoid any such error. Examples of a bona fide error include, but are not limited to, clerical, calculation, computer malfunction and programing, and printing errors, except that an error of legal judgment with respect to a person’s obligations under this subchapter is not a bona fide error.

**(d) Liability in transaction or lease involving multiple obligors**

When there are multiple obligors in a consumer credit transaction or consumer lease, there shall be no more than one recovery of damages under subsection (a)(2) of this section for a violation of this subchapter.

**(e) Jurisdiction of courts; limitations on actions; State attorney general enforcement**

Any action under this section may be brought in any United States district court, or in any other court of competent jurisdiction, within one year from the date of the occurrence of the violation. This subsection does not bar a person from asserting a violation of this subchapter in an action to collect the debt which was brought more than one year from the date of the occurrence of the violation as a matter of defense by recoupment or set-off in such action, except as

otherwise provided by State law. An action to enforce a violation of section 1639 of this title may also be brought by the appropriate State attorney general in any appropriate United States district court, or any other court of competent jurisdiction, not later than 3 years after the date on which the violation occurs. The State attorney general shall provide prior written notice of any such civil action to the Federal agency responsible for enforcement under section 1607 of this title and shall provide the agency with a copy of the complaint. If prior notice is not feasible, the State attorney general shall provide notice to such agency immediately upon instituting the action. The Federal agency may—

(1) intervene in the action;

(2) upon intervening—

(A) remove the action to the appropriate United States district court, if it was not originally brought there; and

(B) be heard on all matters arising in the action; and

(3) file a petition for appeal.

**(f) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or with interpretation or approval of duly authorized official or employee of Federal Reserve System**

No provision of this section, section 1607(b) of this title, section 1607(c) of this title, section 1607(e) of this title, or section 1611 of this title imposing any liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with any rule, regulation, or interpretation thereof by the Board or in conformity with any interpretation or approval by an official or employee of the Federal Reserve System duly authorized by the Board to issue such interpretations or approvals under such procedures as the Board may prescribe therefor, notwithstanding that after such act or omission has occurred, such rule, regulation, interpretation, or approval is amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

**(g) Recovery for multiple failures to disclose**

The multiple failure to disclose to any person any information required under this part or part D or E of this subchapter to be disclosed in connection with a single account under an open end consumer credit plan, other single consumer credit sale, consumer loan, consumer lease, or other extension of consumer credit, shall entitle the person to a single recovery under this section but continued failure to disclose after a recovery has been granted shall give rise to rights to additional recoveries. This subsection does not bar any remedy permitted by section 1635 of this title.

**(h) Offset from amount owed to creditor or assignee; rights of defaulting consumer**

A person may not take any action to offset any amount for which a creditor or assignee is potentially liable to such person under subsection (a)(2) of this section against any amount owed by such person, unless the amount of the creditor’s or assignee’s liability under this subchapter has been determined by judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction in an action of

which such person was a party. This subsection does not bar a consumer then in default on the obligation from asserting a violation of this subchapter as an original action, or as a defense or counterclaim to an action to collect amounts owed by the consumer brought by a person liable under this subchapter.

**(i) Class action moratorium**

**(1) In general**

During the period beginning on May 18, 1995, and ending on October 1, 1995, no court may enter any order certifying any class in any action under this subchapter—

(A) which is brought in connection with any credit transaction not under an open end credit plan which is secured by a first lien on real property or a dwelling and constitutes a refinancing or consolidation of an existing extension of credit; and

(B) which is based on the alleged failure of a creditor—

(i) to include a charge actually incurred (in connection with the transaction) in the finance charge disclosed pursuant to section 1638 of this title;

(ii) to properly make any other disclosure required under section 1638 of this title as a result of the failure described in clause (i); or

(iii) to provide proper notice of rescission rights under section 1635(a) of this title due to the selection by the creditor of the incorrect form from among the model forms prescribed by the Board or from among forms based on such model forms.

**(2) Exceptions for certain alleged violations**

Paragraph (1) shall not apply with respect to any action—

(A) described in clause (i) or (ii) of paragraph (1)(B), if the amount disclosed as the finance charge results in an annual percentage rate that exceeds the tolerance provided in section 1606(c) of this title; or

(B) described in paragraph (1)(B)(iii), if—

(i) no notice relating to rescission rights under section 1635(a) of this title was provided in any form; or

(ii) proper notice was not provided for any reason other than the reason described in such paragraph.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 130, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 157; Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §§ 406, 407, 408(a)-(d), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1518; Pub. L. 94-222, § 3(b), Feb. 27, 1976, 90 Stat. 197; Pub. L. 94-240, § 4, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 260; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 615, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 180; Pub. L. 100-583, § 3, Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2966; Pub. L. 103-325, title I, § 153(a), (b), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2195; Pub. L. 104-12, § 2, May 18, 1995, 109 Stat. 161; Pub. L. 104-29, § 6, Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 274.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a)(2)(A)(iii). Pub. L. 104-29 added cl. (iii).

Subsec. (i). Pub. L. 104-12 added subsec. (i).

1994—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 103-325, § 153(a), added par. (4).

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 103-325, § 153(b), inserted at end “An action to enforce a violation of section 1639 of this title may also be brought by the appropriate State at-

torney general in any appropriate United States district court, or any other court of competent jurisdiction, not later than 3 years after the date on which the violation occurs. The State attorney general shall provide prior written notice of any such civil action to the Federal agency responsible for enforcement under section 1607 of this title and shall provide the agency with a copy of the complaint. If prior notice is not feasible, the State attorney general shall provide notice to such agency immediately upon instituting the action. The Federal agency may—

“(1) intervene in the action;

“(2) upon intervening—

“(A) remove the action to the appropriate United States district court, if it was not originally brought there; and

“(B) be heard on all matters arising in the action; and

“(3) file a petition for appeal.”

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-583 substituted “in subsections (a) and (b) of section 1637” for “in section 1637” in third sentence and inserted provisions limiting liability of card issuer under this section to cardholders who pay fee or use credit card or charge card.

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(b), in introductory text inserted provisions respecting applicability of section 1635 of this title, and in text following numbered pars. inserted provisions relating to disclosures required under sections 1637 and 1638 of this title.

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(1), substituted provisions respecting recovery under this subparagraph in any class action or series of class actions, for provisions respecting recovery in a class action.

Subsec. (a)(3). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(2), inserted provisions relating to right of rescission under section 1635 of this title.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(3), substituted provisions relating to correction of errors within sixty days by a creditor or assignee, for provisions relating to correction of errors within fifteen days by a creditor.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(3), substituted provisions relating to liability of a creditor or assignee in any action brought under this section or section 1635 of this title, for provisions relating to liability of a creditor in any action brought under this section.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(3), substituted provisions relating to liability in transaction or lease involving multiple obligors, for provisions relating to liability of subsequent assignees original creditor.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(4), inserted provisions relating to limitations on actions.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(5), inserted references to section 1607(b), (c), and (e) of this title.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(6), inserted provisions relating to remedy under section 1635 of this title.

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 96-221, § 615(a)(7), substituted provisions relating to offset from amounts owed to the creditor or assignee, and rights of defaulting consumer, for provisions relating to offset from amounts owed to the creditor.

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-240, § 4(1), inserted “or E” after “part D”.

Subsec. (a)(2)(A). Pub. L. 94-240, § 4(2), designated existing provision as cl. (i) and added cl. (ii).

Subsec. (a)(2)(B). Pub. L. 94-240, § 4(3), substituted “lesser of \$500,000” for “lesser of \$100,000”.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-240, § 4(4), inserted “or part E of this subchapter” after “this part” and struck out “finance” after “required to pay a”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-222 inserted “or in conformity with any interpretation or approval by an official or employee of the Federal Reserve System duly authorized by the Board to issue such interpretations or approvals under such procedures as the Board may prescribe therefor” after “by the Board”, and substituted “interpretation, or approval” for “or interpretation” before “is amended”.

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 94-240, § 4(5), inserted “or part D or E of this subchapter” after “this part”, and “consumer lease” after “consumer loan”.

1974—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 93-495, § 408(a), substituted provisions setting forth determination of amount of liability of any creditor failing to comply with any requirement imposed under part D of this subchapter or this part, for provisions setting forth determination of amount of liability of any creditor failing to disclose in connection with any consumer credit transaction any information required under this part to be disclosed to specified persons.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 93-495, § 408(b), inserted “for any failure to comply with any requirement imposed under this part,” before “if within”.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 93-495, § 408(c), substituted “subchapter” for “part”.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 93-495, § 406, added subsec. (f).

Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 93-495, § 407, added subsec. (g).

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 93-495, § 408(d), added subsec. (h).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-240 effective on expiration of one year after Mar. 23, 1976, see section 6 of Pub. L. 94-240, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1667 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 93-495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

#### DETERMINATION OF LIABILITY PRIOR TO OCTOBER 28, 1974

Section 408(e) of Pub. L. 93-495 provided that: “The amendments made by sections 406, 407, and 408 [amending this section] shall apply in determining the liability of any person under chapter 2 or 4 of the Truth in Lending Act [this part or part D of this subchapter], unless prior to the date of enactment of this Act [Oct. 28, 1974] such liability has been determined by final judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction and no further review of such judgment may be had by appeal or otherwise.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1610, 1635, 1667d of this title; title 12 section 3806.

### § 1641. Liability of assignees

#### (a) Prerequisites

Except as otherwise specifically provided in this subchapter, any civil action for a violation of this subchapter or proceeding under section 1607 of this title which may be brought against a creditor may be maintained against any assignee of such creditor only if the violation for which such action or proceeding is brought is apparent on the face of the disclosure statement, except where the assignment was involuntary. For the purpose of this section, a violation apparent on the face of the disclosure statement includes, but is not limited to (1) a disclosure which can be determined to be incomplete or inaccurate from the face of the disclosure statement or other documents assigned, or (2) a disclosure which does not use the terms required to be used by this subchapter.

#### (b) Proof of compliance with statutory provisions

Except as provided in section 1635(c) of this title, in any action or proceeding by or against any subsequent assignee of the original creditor without knowledge to the contrary by the assignee when he acquires the obligation, written acknowledgement of receipt by a person to whom a statement is required to be given pursuant to this subchapter shall be conclusive proof of the delivery thereof and, except as provided in subsection (a) of this section, of compliance with this part. This section does not affect the rights of the obligor in any action against the original creditor.

#### (c) Right of rescission by consumer unaffected

Any consumer who has the right to rescind a transaction under section 1635 of this title may rescind the transaction as against any assignee of the obligation.

#### (d) Rights upon assignment of certain mortgages

##### (1) In general

Any person who purchases or is otherwise assigned a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title shall be subject to all claims and defenses with respect to that mortgage that the consumer could assert against the creditor of the mortgage, unless the purchaser or assignee demonstrates, by a preponderance of the evidence, that a reasonable person exercising ordinary due diligence, could not determine, based on the documentation required by this subchapter, the itemization of the amount financed, and other disclosure of disbursements that the mortgage was a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title. The preceding sentence does not affect rights of a consumer under subsection (a), (b), or (c) of this section or any other provision of this subchapter.

##### (2) Limitation on damages

Notwithstanding any other provision of law, relief provided as a result of any action made permissible by paragraph (1) may not exceed—

(A) with respect to actions based upon a violation of this subchapter, the amount specified in section 1640 of this title; and

(B) with respect to all other causes of action, the sum of—

(i) the amount of all remaining indebtedness; and

(ii) the total amount paid by the consumer in connection with the transaction.

##### (3) Offset

The amount of damages that may be awarded under paragraph (2)(B) shall be reduced by the amount of any damages awarded under paragraph (2)(A).

##### (4) Notice

Any person who sells or otherwise assigns a mortgage referred to in section 1602(aa) of this title shall include a prominent notice of the potential liability under this subsection as determined by the Board.

#### (e) Liability of assignee for consumer credit transactions secured by real property

##### (1) In general

Except as otherwise specifically provided in this subchapter, any civil action against a

creditor for a violation of this subchapter, and any proceeding under section 1607 of this title against a creditor, with respect to a consumer credit transaction secured by real property may be maintained against any assignee of such creditor only if—

(A) the violation for which such action or proceeding is brought is apparent on the face of the disclosure statement provided in connection with such transaction pursuant to this subchapter; and

(B) the assignment to the assignee was voluntary.

**(2) Violation apparent on the face of the disclosure described**

For the purpose of this section, a violation is apparent on the face of the disclosure statement if—

(A) the disclosure can be determined to be incomplete or inaccurate by a comparison among the disclosure statement, any itemization of the amount financed, the note, or any other disclosure of disbursement; or

(B) the disclosure statement does not use the terms or format required to be used by this subchapter.

**(f) Treatment of servicer**

**(1) In general**

A servicer of a consumer obligation arising from a consumer credit transaction shall not be treated as an assignee of such obligation for purposes of this section unless the servicer is or was the owner of the obligation.

**(2) Servicer not treated as owner on basis of assignment for administrative convenience**

A servicer of a consumer obligation arising from a consumer credit transaction shall not be treated as the owner of the obligation for purposes of this section on the basis of an assignment of the obligation from the creditor or another assignee to the servicer solely for the administrative convenience of the servicer in servicing the obligation. Upon written request by the obligor, the servicer shall provide the obligor, to the best knowledge of the servicer, with the name, address, and telephone number of the owner of the obligation or the master servicer of the obligation.

**(3) "Servicer" defined**

For purposes of this subsection, the term "servicer" has the same meaning as in section 2605(i)(2) of title 12.

**(4) Applicability**

This subsection shall apply to all consumer credit transactions in existence or consummated on or after September 30, 1995.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 131, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 157; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 616(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 182; Pub. L. 103-325, title I, § 153(c), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2195; Pub. L. 104-29, § 7, Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 274.)

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 104-29, § 7(a), added subsec. (e).

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 104-29, § 7(b), added subsec. (f).

1994—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 103-325 added subsec. (d).

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 added subsecs. (a) and (c), designated existing provisions as subsec. (b), substituted "excepted as provided in subsection (a) of this section" for "unless the violation is apparent on the face of the statement", and struck out exception for actions under section 1640(d) of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1640, 1667d of this title.

**§ 1642. Issuance of credit cards**

No credit card shall be issued except in response to a request or application therefor. This prohibition does not apply to the issuance of a credit card in renewal of, or in substitution for, an accepted credit card.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 132, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title V, § 502(a), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1126.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 503(1) of Pub. L. 91-508 provided that: "Section 132 of such Act [this section] takes effect on date of enactment of this title [Oct. 26, 1970]."

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1645 of this title.

**§ 1643. Liability of holder of credit card**

**(a) Limits on liability**

(1) A cardholder shall be liable for the unauthorized use of a credit card only if—

(A) the card is an accepted credit card;

(B) the liability is not in excess of \$50;

(C) the card issuer gives adequate notice to the cardholder of the potential liability;

(D) the card issuer has provided the cardholder with a description of a means by which the card issuer may be notified of loss or theft of the card, which description may be provided on the face or reverse side of the statement required by section 1637(b) of this title or on a separate notice accompanying such statement;

(E) the unauthorized use occurs before the card issuer has been notified that an unauthorized use of the credit card has occurred or may occur as the result of loss, theft, or otherwise; and

(F) the card issuer has provided a method whereby the user of such card can be identified as the person authorized to use it.

(2) For purposes of this section, a card issuer has been notified when such steps as may be reasonably required in the ordinary course of of business to provide the card issuer with the pertinent information have been taken, whether or not any particular officer, employee, or agent of the card issuer does in fact receive such information.

**(b) Burden of proof**

In any action by a card issuer to enforce liability for the use of a credit card, the burden of proof is upon the card issuer to show that the use was authorized or, if the use was unauthorized, then the burden of proof is upon the card issuer to show that the conditions of liability for the unauthorized use of a credit card, as set forth in subsection (a) of this section, have been met.

**(c) Liability imposed by other laws or by agreement with issuer**

Nothing in this section imposes liability upon a cardholder for the unauthorized use of a credit card in excess of his liability for such use under other applicable law or under any agreement with the card issuer.

**(d) Exclusiveness of liability**

Except as provided in this section, a cardholder incurs no liability from the unauthorized use of a credit card.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §133, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title V, §502(a), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1126; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §617, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 182.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221 revised existing provisions into pars. (1) and (2) and, as so revised, in par. (1) made changes in structure and phraseology and revised means of notice and verification, and in par. (2) made changes in phraseology.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 503(2) of Pub. L. 91-508 provided that: "Section 133 of such Act [this section] takes effect upon the expiration of 90 days after such date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1970]."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1602, 1645 of this title.

**§ 1644. Fraudulent use of credit cards; penalties****(a) Use, attempt or conspiracy to use card in transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce**

Whoever knowingly in a transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce, uses or attempts or conspires to use any counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit card to obtain money, goods, services, or anything else of value which within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more; or

**(b) Transporting, attempting or conspiring to transport card in interstate commerce**

Whoever, with unlawful or fraudulent intent, transports or attempts or conspires to transport

in interstate or foreign commerce a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit card knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained; or

**(c) Use of interstate commerce to sell or transport card**

Whoever, with unlawful or fraudulent intent, uses any instrumentality of interstate or foreign commerce to sell or transport a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit card knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained; or

**(d) Receipt, concealment, etc., of goods obtained by use of card**

Whoever knowingly receives, conceals, uses, or transports money, goods, services, or anything else of value (except tickets for interstate or foreign transportation) which (1) within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more, (2) has moved in or is part of, or which constitutes interstate or foreign commerce, and (3) has been obtained with a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit card; or

**(e) Receipt, concealment, etc., of tickets for interstate or foreign transportation obtained by use of card**

Whoever knowingly receives, conceals, uses, sells, or transports in interstate or foreign commerce one or more tickets for interstate or foreign transportation, which (1) within any one-year period have a value aggregating \$500 or more, and (2) have been purchased or obtained with one or more counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit cards; or

**(f) Furnishing of money, etc., through use of card**

Whoever in a transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce furnishes money, property, services, or anything else of value, which within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more, through the use of any counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained credit card knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained—

shall be fined not more than \$10,000 or imprisoned not more than ten years, or both.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §134, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title V, §502(a), Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1127; amended Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §414, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1520.)

## AMENDMENTS

1974—Pub. L. 93-495 generally reorganized provisions by designating former unlettered paragraph cls. (a) to (f), and as so designated, expanded prohibitions relating to fraudulent use of credit cards, decreased amount required for fraudulent use from a retail value aggregating \$5,000, or more, to enumerated amounts for particular activities, and increased the punishment from a sentence of not more than five years to a sentence of not more than ten years.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1974 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 93-495 effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1665a of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 503(3) of Pub. L. 91-508 provided that: "Section 134 of such Act [this section] applies to offenses committed on or after such date of enactment [Oct. 26, 1970]."

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1645 of this title.

**§ 1645. Business credit cards; limits on liability of employees**

The exemption provided by section 1603(1) of this title does not apply to the provisions of sections 1642, 1643, and 1644 of this title, except that a card issuer and a business or other organization which provides credit cards issued by the same card issuer to ten or more of its employees may by contract agree as to liability of the business or other organization with respect to unauthorized use of such credit cards without regard to the provisions of section 1643 of this title, but in no case may such business or other organization or card issuer impose liability upon any employee with respect to unauthorized use of such a credit card except in accordance with and subject to the limitations of section 1643 of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §135, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §410(a), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1519.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Oct. 28, 1974, see section 416 of Pub. L. 93-495, set out as a note under section 1665a of this title.

**§ 1646. Dissemination of annual percentage rates; implementation, etc.**

**(a) Annual percentage rates**

The Board shall collect, publish, and disseminate to the public, on a demonstration basis in a number of standard metropolitan statistical areas to be determined by the Board, the annual percentage rates charged for representative types of nonsale credit by creditors in such areas. For the purpose of this section, the Board is authorized to require creditors in such areas to furnish information necessary for the Board to collect, publish, and disseminate such information.

**(b) Credit card price and availability information**

**(1) Collection required**

The Board shall collect, on a semiannual basis, credit card price and availability information, including the information required to be disclosed under section 1637(c) of this title, from a broad sample of financial institutions which offer credit card services.

**(2) Sample requirements**

The broad sample of financial institutions required under paragraph (1) shall include—

(A) the 25 largest issuers of credit cards; and

(B) not less than 125 additional financial institutions selected by the Board in a manner that ensures—

(i) an equitable geographical distribution within the sample; and

(ii) the representation of a wide spectrum of institutions within the sample.

**(3) Report of information from sample**

Each financial institution in the broad sample established pursuant to paragraph (2) shall report the information to the Board in accordance with such regulations or orders as the Board may prescribe.

**(4) Public availability of collected information; report to Congress**

The Board shall—

(A) make the information collected pursuant to this subsection available to the public upon request; and

(B) report such information semiannually to Congress.

**(c) Implementation**

The Board is authorized to enter into contracts or other arrangements with appropriate persons, organizations, or State agencies to carry out its functions under subsections (a) and (b) of this section and to furnish financial assistance in support thereof.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §136, as added Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §618(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 183; amended Pub. L. 100-583, §5, Nov. 3, 1988, 102 Stat. 2967.)

## AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 100-583 added subsec. (b), redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c), and substituted "subsections (a) and (b)" for "subsection (a)".

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as an Effective Date of 1980 Amendment note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1647. Home equity plans**

**(a) Index requirement**

In the case of extensions of credit under an open end consumer credit plan which are subject to a variable rate and are secured by a consumer's principal dwelling, the index or other rate of interest to which changes in the annual percentage rate are related shall be based on an index or rate of interest which is publicly available and is not under the control of the creditor.

**(b) Grounds for acceleration of outstanding balance**

A creditor may not unilaterally terminate any account under an open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by a consumer's principal dwelling and require the immediate repayment of any outstanding balance at such time, except in the case of—

(1) fraud or material misrepresentation on the part of the consumer in connection with the account;

(2) failure by the consumer to meet the repayment terms of the agreement for any outstanding balance; or

(3) any other action or failure to act by the consumer which adversely affects the creditor's security for the account or any right of the creditor in such security.

This subsection does not apply to reverse mortgage transactions.

**(c) Change in terms**

**(1) In general**

No open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by a consumer's principal dwelling may contain a provision which permits a creditor to change unilaterally any term required to be disclosed under section 1637a(a) of this title or any other term, except a change in insignificant terms such as the address of the creditor for billing purposes.

**(2) Certain changes not precluded**

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection<sup>1</sup> (1), a creditor may make any of the following changes:

(A) Change the index and margin applicable to extensions of credit under such plan if the index used by the creditor is no longer available and the substitute index and margin would result in a substantially similar interest rate.

(B) Prohibit additional extensions of credit or reduce the credit limit applicable to an account under the plan during any period in which the value of the consumer's principal dwelling which secures any outstanding balance is significantly less than the original appraisal value of the dwelling.

(C) Prohibit additional extensions of credit or reduce the credit limit applicable to the account during any period in which the creditor has reason to believe that the consumer will be unable to comply with the repayment requirements of the account due to a material change in the consumer's financial circumstances.

(D) Prohibit additional extensions of credit or reduce the credit limit applicable to the account during any period in which the consumer is in default with respect to any material obligation of the consumer under the agreement.

(E) Prohibit additional extensions of credit or reduce the credit limit applicable to the account during any period in which—

(i) the creditor is precluded by government action from imposing the annual percentage rate provided for in the account agreement; or

(ii) any government action is in effect which adversely affects the priority of the creditor's security interest in the account to the extent that the value of the creditor's secured interest in the property is less than 120 percent of the amount of the credit limit applicable to the account.

(F) Any change that will benefit the consumer.

**(3) Material obligations**

Upon the request of the consumer and at the time an agreement is entered into by a con-

sumer to open an account under an open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by the consumer's principal dwelling, the consumer shall be given a list of the categories of contract obligations which are deemed by the creditor to be material obligations of the consumer under the agreement for purposes of paragraph (2)(D).

**(4) Consumer benefit**

**(A) In general**

For purposes of paragraph (2)(F), a change shall be deemed to benefit the consumer if the change is unequivocally beneficial to the borrower and the change is beneficial through the entire term of the agreement.

**(B) Board categorization**

The Board may, by regulation, determine categories of changes that benefit the consumer.

**(d) Terms changed after application**

If any term or condition described in section 1637a(a) of this title which is disclosed to a consumer in connection with an application to open an account under an open end consumer credit plan described in such section (other than a variable feature of the plan) changes before the account is opened, and if, as a result of such change, the consumer elects not to enter into the plan agreement, the creditor shall refund all fees paid by the consumer in connection with such application.

**(e) Additional requirements relating to refunds and imposition of nonrefundable fees**

**(1) In general**

No nonrefundable fee may be imposed by a creditor or any other person in connection with any application by a consumer to establish an account under any open end consumer credit plan which provides for extensions of credit which are secured by a consumer's principal dwelling before the end of the 3-day period beginning on the date such consumer receives the disclosure required under section 1637a(a) of this title and the pamphlet required under section 1637a(e) of this title with respect to such application.

**(2) Constructive receipt**

For purposes of determining when a nonrefundable fee may be imposed in accordance with this subsection if the disclosures and pamphlet referred to in paragraph (1) are mailed to the consumer, the date of the receipt of the disclosures by such consumer shall be deemed to be 3 business days after the date of mailing by the creditor.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §137, as added Pub. L. 100-709, §3, Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4731; amended Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §154(c), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2197.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 103-325 inserted at end “This subsection does not apply to reverse mortgage transactions.”

EFFECTIVE DATE

For effective date of section, see Regulations; Effective Date note below.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be “paragraph”.

## REGULATIONS; EFFECTIVE DATE

For provisions relating to promulgation of regulations to implement amendment by Pub. L. 100-709 [enacting this section], and effective date of such amendment in connection with those regulations, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100-709, set out as a note under section 1637a of this title.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1637a of this title; title 12 section 1715z-20.

**§ 1648. Reverse mortgages****(a) In general**

In addition to the disclosures required under this subchapter, for each reverse mortgage, the creditor shall, not less than 3 days prior to consummation of the transaction, disclose to the consumer in conspicuous type a good faith estimate of the projected total cost of the mortgage to the consumer expressed as a table of annual interest rates. Each annual interest rate shall be based on a projected total future credit extension balance under a projected appreciation rate for the dwelling and a term for the mortgage. The disclosure shall include—

- (1) statements of the annual interest rates for not less than 3 projected appreciation rates and not less than 3 credit transaction periods, as determined by the Board, including—
  - (A) a short-term reverse mortgage;
  - (B) a term equaling the actuarial life expectancy of the consumer; and
  - (C) such longer term as the Board deems appropriate; and
- (2) a statement that the consumer is not obligated to complete the reverse mortgage transaction merely because the consumer has received the disclosure required under this section or has signed an application for the reverse mortgage.

**(b) Projected total cost**

In determining the projected total cost of the mortgage to be disclosed to the consumer under subsection (a) of this section, the creditor shall take into account—

- (1) any shared appreciation or equity that the lender will, by contract, be entitled to receive;
- (2) all costs and charges to the consumer, including the costs of any associated annuity that the consumer elects or is required to purchase as part of the reverse mortgage transaction;
- (3) all payments to and for the benefit of the consumer, including, in the case in which an associated annuity is purchased (whether or not required by the lender as a condition of making the reverse mortgage), the annuity payments received by the consumer and financed from the proceeds of the loan, instead of the proceeds used to finance the annuity; and
- (4) any limitation on the liability of the consumer under reverse mortgage transactions (such as nonrecourse limits and equity conservation agreements).

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §138, as added Pub. L. 103-325, title I, §154(b), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2196.)

**§ 1649. Certain limitations on liability****(a) Limitations on liability**

For any consumer credit transaction subject to this subchapter that is consummated before September 30, 1995, a creditor or any assignee of a creditor shall have no civil, administrative, or criminal liability under this subchapter for, and a consumer shall have no extended rescission rights under section 1635(f) of this title with respect to—

- (1) the creditor's treatment, for disclosure purposes, of—
  - (A) taxes described in section 1605(d)(3) of this title;
  - (B) fees described in section 1605(e)(2) and (5) of this title;
  - (C) fees and amounts referred to in the 3rd sentence of section 1605(a) of this title; or
  - (D) borrower-paid mortgage broker fees referred to in section 1605(a)(6) of this title;
- (2) the form of written notice used by the creditor to inform the obligor of the rights of the obligor under section 1635 of this title if the creditor provided the obligor with a properly dated form of written notice published and adopted by the Board or a comparable written notice, and otherwise complied with all the requirements of this section regarding notice; or
- (3) any disclosure relating to the finance charge imposed with respect to the transaction if the amount or percentage actually disclosed—

(A) may be treated as accurate for purposes of this subchapter if the amount disclosed as the finance charge does not vary from the actual finance charge by more than \$200;

(B) may, under section 1605(f)(2) of this title, be treated as accurate for purposes of section 1635 of this title; or

(C) is greater than the amount or percentage required to be disclosed under this subchapter.

**(b) Exceptions**

Subsection (a) of this section shall not apply to—

- (1) any individual action or counterclaim brought under this subchapter which was filed before June 1, 1995;
- (2) any class action brought under this subchapter for which a final order certifying a class was entered before January 1, 1995;
- (3) the named individual plaintiffs in any class action brought under this subchapter which was filed before June 1, 1995; or
- (4) any consumer credit transaction with respect to which a timely notice of rescission was sent to the creditor before June 1, 1995.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §139, as added Pub. L. 104-29, §4(a), Sept. 30, 1995, 109 Stat. 273.)

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1635 of this title.

## PART C—CREDIT ADVERTISING

## PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in section 1610 of this title.

**§ 1661. Catalogs and multiple-page advertisements**

For the purposes of this part, a catalog or other multiple-page advertisement shall be considered a single advertisement if it clearly and conspicuously displays a credit terms table on which the information required to be stated under this part is clearly set forth.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 141, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 158.)

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 504(b) of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that chapter 3 of title I, which enacted sections 1661 to 1665 of this title, is effective July 1, 1969.

**§ 1662. Advertising of downpayments and installments**

No advertisement to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly any extension of consumer credit may state

(1) that a specific periodic consumer credit amount or installment amount can be arranged, unless the creditor usually and customarily arranges credit payments or installments for that period and in that amount.

(2) that a specified downpayment is required in connection with any extension of consumer credit, unless the creditor usually and customarily arranges downpayments in that amount.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 142, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 158.)

**§ 1663. Advertising of open end credit plans**

No advertisement to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly the extension of consumer credit under an open end credit plan may set forth any of the specific terms of that plan unless it also clearly and conspicuously sets forth all of the following items:

(1) Any minimum or fixed amount which could be imposed.

(2) In any case in which periodic rates may be used to compute the finance charge, the periodic rates expressed as annual percentage rates.

(3) Any other term that the Board may by regulation require to be disclosed.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 143, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §§ 613(f), 619(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 177, 183.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 in existing introductory text struck out applicability of rate determined under section 1637(a)(5) of this title, and amended section generally substituting items setting forth minimum or fixed amount, etc., set out in pars. (1) to (3), for items time period, etc., set out in pars. (1) to (5).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1664. Advertising of credit other than open end plans****(a) Exclusion of open end credit plans**

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section, this section applies to any advertisement to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly any consumer credit sale, loan, or other extension of credit subject to the provisions of this subchapter, other than an open end credit plan.

**(b) Advertisements of residential real estate**

The provisions of this section do not apply to advertisements of residential real estate except to the extent that the Board may by regulation require.

**(c) Rate of finance charge expressed as annual percentage rate**

If any advertisement to which this section applies states the rate of a finance charge, the advertisement shall state the rate of that charge expressed as an annual percentage rate.

**(d) Requisite disclosures in advertisement**

If any advertisement to which this section applies states the amount of the downpayment, if any, the amount of any installment payment, the dollar amount of any finance charge, or the number of installments or the period of repayment, then the advertisement shall state all of the following items:

(1) The downpayment, if any.

(2) The terms of repayment.

(3) The rate of the finance charge expressed as an annual percentage rate.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 144, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 158; Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, § 619(b), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 183.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 97-221 substituted items setting forth downpayment, etc., set out in pars. (1) to (3), for items setting forth cash price or amount of loan, etc., set out in pars. (1) to (4).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1665. Nonliability of advertising media**

There is no liability under this part on the part of any owner or personnel, as such, of any medium in which an advertisement appears or through which it is disseminated.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, § 145, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 159.)

**§ 1665a. Use of annual percentage rate in oral disclosures; exceptions**

In responding orally to any inquiry about the cost of credit, a creditor, regardless of the method used to compute finance charges, shall state rates only in terms of the annual percentage

rate, except that in the case of an open end credit plan, the periodic rate also may be stated and, in the case of an other than open end credit plan where a major component of the finance charge consists of interest computed at a simple annual rate, the simple annual rate also may be stated. The Board may, by regulation, modify the requirements of this section or provide an exception from this section for a transaction or class of transactions for which the creditor cannot determine in advance the applicable annual percentage rate.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §146, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title IV, §401(a), Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1517; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §623(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 185.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions relating to use of annual percentage rate in oral disclosures by creditors, for provisions setting forth requirements for advertisements concerning consumer credit repayable in more than four installments.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 416 of title IV of Pub. L. 93-495 provided that: "This title [enacting this section and sections 1614 and 1645 of this title, amending sections 1603, 1607, 1635, 1637, 1640, and 1644 of this title, and enacting provision set out as a note under section 1640 of this title] takes effect upon the date of its enactment [Oct. 28, 1974], except that sections 409 [amending section 1631 of this title] and 411 [amending section 1637 of this title] take effect upon the expiration of one year after the date of its enactment [Oct. 28, 1974]."

### § 1665b. Advertising of open end consumer credit plans secured by consumer's principal dwelling

#### (a) In general

If any advertisement to aid, promote, or assist, directly or indirectly, the extension of consumer credit through an open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by the consumer's principal dwelling states, affirmatively or negatively, any of the specific terms of the plan, including any periodic payment amount required under such plan, such advertisement shall also clearly and conspicuously set forth the following information, in such form and manner as the Board may require:

##### (1) Loan fees and opening cost estimates

Any loan fee the amount of which is determined as a percentage of the credit limit applicable to an account under the plan and an estimate of the aggregate amount of other fees for opening the account, based on the creditor's experience with the plan and stated as a single amount or as a reasonable range.

##### (2) Periodic rates

In any case in which periodic rates may be used to compute the finance charge, the periodic rates expressed as an annual percentage rate.

##### (3) Highest annual percentage rate

The highest annual percentage rate which may be imposed under the plan.

##### (4) Other information

Any other information the Board may by regulation require.

#### (b) Tax deductibility

If any advertisement described in subsection (a) of this section contains a statement that any interest expense incurred with respect to the plan is or may be tax deductible, the advertisement shall not be misleading with respect to such deductibility.

#### (c) Certain terms prohibited

No advertisement described in subsection (a) of this section with respect to any home equity account may refer to such loan as "free money" or use other terms determined by the Board by regulation to be misleading.

#### (d) Discounted initial rate

##### (1) In general

If any advertisement described in subsection (a) of this section includes an initial annual percentage rate that is not determined by the index or formula used to make later interest rate adjustments, the advertisement shall also state with equal prominence the current annual percentage rate that would have been applied using the index or formula if such initial rate had not been offered.

##### (2) Quoted rate must be reasonably current

The annual percentage rate required to be disclosed under the paragraph (1) rate must be current as of a reasonable time given the media involved.

##### (3) Period during which initial rate is in effect

Any advertisement to which paragraph (1) applies shall also state the period of time during which the initial annual percentage rate referred to in such paragraph will be in effect.

#### (e) Balloon payment

If any advertisement described in subsection (a) of this section contains a statement regarding the minimum monthly payment under the plan, the advertisement shall also disclose, if applicable, the fact that the plan includes a balloon payment.

#### (f) "Balloon payment" defined

For purposes of this section and section 1637a of this title, the term "balloon payment" means, with respect to any open end consumer credit plan under which extensions of credit are secured by the consumer's principal dwelling, any repayment option under which—

(1) the account holder is required to repay the entire amount of any outstanding balance as of a specified date or at the end of a specified period of time, as determined in accordance with the terms of the agreement pursuant to which such credit is extended; and

(2) the aggregate amount of the minimum periodic payments required would not fully amortize such outstanding balance by such date or at the end of such period.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §147, as added Pub. L. 100-709, §2(c), Nov. 23, 1988, 102 Stat. 4730.)

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

For effective date of section, see Regulations; Effective Date note below.

#### REGULATIONS; EFFECTIVE DATE

For provisions relating to promulgation of regulations to implement amendment by Pub. L. 100-709 [enacting this section], and effective date of such amendment in connection with those regulations, see section 7 of Pub. L. 100-709, set out as a note under section 1637a of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1637a of this title.

#### PART D—CREDIT BILLING

##### PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 1602, 1604, 1632, 1640, 5721 of this title.

### § 1666. Correction of billing errors

#### (a) Written notice by obligor to creditor; time for and contents of notice; procedure upon receipt of notice by creditor

If a creditor, within sixty days after having transmitted to an obligor a statement of the obligor's account in connection with an extension of consumer credit, receives at the address disclosed under section 1637(b)(10) of this title a written notice (other than notice on a payment stub or other payment medium supplied by the creditor if the creditor so stipulates with the disclosure required under section 1637(a)(7) of this title) from the obligor in which the obligor—

(1) sets forth or otherwise enables the creditor to identify the name and account number (if any) of the obligor,

(2) indicates the obligor's belief that the statement contains a billing error and the amount of such billing error, and

(3) sets forth the reasons for the obligor's belief (to the extent applicable) that the statement contains a billing error,

the creditor shall, unless the obligor has, after giving such written notice and before the expiration of the time limits herein specified, agreed that the statement was correct—

(A) not later than thirty days after the receipt of the notice, send a written acknowledgment thereof to the obligor, unless the action required in subparagraph (B) is taken within such thirty-day period, and

(B) not later than two complete billing cycles of the creditor (in no event later than ninety days) after the receipt of the notice and prior to taking any action to collect the amount, or any part thereof, indicated by the obligor under paragraph (2) either—

(i) make appropriate corrections in the account of the obligor, including the crediting of any finance charges on amounts erro-

neously billed, and transmit to the obligor a notification of such corrections and the creditor's explanation of any change in the amount indicated by the obligor under paragraph (2) and, if any such change is made and the obligor so requests, copies of documentary evidence of the obligor's indebtedness; or

(ii) send a written explanation or clarification to the obligor, after having conducted an investigation, setting forth to the extent applicable the reasons why the creditor believes the account of the obligor was correctly shown in the statement and, upon request of the obligor, provide copies of documentary evidence of the obligor's indebtedness. In the case of a billing error where the obligor alleges that the creditor's billing statement reflects goods not delivered to the obligor or his designee in accordance with the agreement made at the time of the transaction, a creditor may not construe such amount to be correctly shown unless he determines that such goods were actually delivered, mailed, or otherwise sent to the obligor and provides the obligor with a statement of such determination.

After complying with the provisions of this subsection with respect to an alleged billing error, a creditor has no further responsibility under this section if the obligor continues to make substantially the same allegation with respect to such error.

#### (b) Billing error

For the purpose of this section, a "billing error" consists of any of the following:

(1) A reflection on a statement of an extension of credit which was not made to the obligor or, if made, was not in the amount reflected on such statement.

(2) A reflection on a statement of an extension of credit for which the obligor requests additional clarification including documentary evidence thereof.

(3) A reflection on a statement of goods or services not accepted by the obligor or his designee or not delivered to the obligor or his designee in accordance with the agreement made at the time of a transaction.

(4) The creditor's failure to reflect properly on a statement a payment made by the obligor or a credit issued to the obligor.

(5) A computation error or similar error of an accounting nature of the creditor on a statement.

(6) Failure to transmit the statement required under section 1637(b) of this title to the last address of the obligor which has been disclosed to the creditor, unless that address was furnished less than twenty days before the end of the billing cycle for which the statement is required.

(7) Any other error described in regulations of the Board.

#### (c) Action by creditor to collect amount or any part thereof regarded by obligor to be a billing error

For the purposes of this section, "action to collect the amount, or any part thereof, indi-

cated by an obligor under paragraph (2)" does not include the sending of statements of account, which may include finance charges on amounts in dispute, to the obligor following written notice from the obligor as specified under subsection (a) of this section, if—

- (1) the obligor's account is not restricted or closed because of the failure of the obligor to pay the amount indicated under paragraph (2) of subsection (a) of this section, and
- (2) the creditor indicates the payment of such amount is not required pending the creditor's compliance with this section.

Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit any action by a creditor to collect any amount which has not been indicated by the obligor to contain a billing error.

**(d) Restricting or closing by creditor of account regarded by obligor to contain a billing error**

Pursuant to regulations of the Board, a creditor operating an open end consumer credit plan may not, prior to the sending of the written explanation or clarification required under paragraph (B)(ii), restrict or close an account with respect to which the obligor has indicated pursuant to subsection (a) of this section that he believes such account to contain a billing error solely because of the obligor's failure to pay the amount indicated to be in error. Nothing in this subsection shall be deemed to prohibit a creditor from applying against the credit limit on the obligor's account the amount indicated to be in error.

**(e) Effect of noncompliance with requirements by creditor**

Any creditor who fails to comply with the requirements of this section or section 1666a of this title forfeits any right to collect from the obligor the amount indicated by the obligor under paragraph (2) of subsection (a) of this section, and any finance charges thereon, except that the amount required to be forfeited under this subsection may not exceed \$50.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §161, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1512; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI §§613(g), 620, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 177, 184.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 96-221, §613(g), substituted "(b)(10)" for "(b)(11)" and "(a)(7)" for "(a)(8)".

Subsec. (b)(6), (7). Pub. L. 96-221, §620(a), added par. (6) and redesignated former par. (6) as (7).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 96-221, §620(b), inserted provisions respecting finance charges on amounts in dispute.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 308 of title III of Pub. L. 93-495 provided that: "This title [enacting this section and sections 1666a to 1666j of this title, amending sections 1601, 1602, 1610,

1631, 1632, and 1637 of this title, and enacting provision set out as a note under section 1601 of this title] takes effect upon the expiration of one year after the date of its enactment [Oct. 28, 1974]."

SHORT TITLE

Title III of Pub. L. 93-495, which is classified principally to this part, is known as the "Fair Credit Billing Act". For complete classification of Title III to the Code, see Short Title of 1974 Amendment note set out under section 1601 of this title and Tables.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1637, 1666a of this title.

**§ 1666a. Regulation of credit reports**

**(a) Reports by creditor on obligor's failure to pay amount regarded as billing error**

After receiving a notice from an obligor as provided in section 1666(a) of this title, a creditor or his agent may not directly or indirectly threaten to report to any person adversely on the obligor's credit rating or credit standing because of the obligor's failure to pay the amount indicated by the obligor under section 1666(a)(2) of this title, and such amount may not be reported as delinquent to any third party until the creditor has met the requirements of section 1666 of this title and has allowed the obligor the same number of days (not less than ten) thereafter to make payment as is provided under the credit agreement with the obligor for the payment of undisputed amounts.

**(b) Reports by creditor on delinquent amounts in dispute; notification of obligor of parties notified of delinquency**

If a creditor receives a further written notice from an obligor that an amount is still in dispute within the time allowed for payment under subsection (a) of this section, a creditor may not report to any third party that the amount of the obligor is delinquent because the obligor has failed to pay an amount which he has indicated under section 1666(a)(2) of this title, unless the creditor also reports that the amount is in dispute and, at the same time, notifies the obligor of the name and address of each party to whom the creditor is reporting information concerning the delinquency.

**(c) Reports by creditor of subsequent resolution of delinquent amounts**

A creditor shall report any subsequent resolution of any delinquencies reported pursuant to subsection (b) of this section to the parties to whom such delinquencies were initially reported.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §162, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1513.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1637, 1666 of this title.

**§ 1666b. Length of billing period in credit statement for imposition of finance charge; effect of failure of timely mailing or delivery of statement**

**(a) Additional finance charge**

If an open end consumer credit plan provides a time period within which an obligor may repay

any portion of the credit extended without incurring an additional finance charge, such additional finance charge may not be imposed with respect to such portion of the credit extended for the billing cycle of which such period is a part unless a statement which includes the amount upon which the finance charge for that period is based was mailed at least fourteen days prior to the date specified in the statement by which payment must be made in order to avoid imposition of that finance charge.

**(b) Excusable cause**

Subsection (a) of this section does not apply in any case where a creditor has been prevented, delayed, or hindered in making timely mailing or delivery of such periodic statement within the time period specified in such subsection because of an act of God, war, natural disaster, strike, or other excusable or justifiable cause, as determined under regulations of the Board.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §163, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1514.)

**§ 1666c. Prompt crediting of payments; imposition of finance charge**

Payments received from an obligor under an open end consumer credit plan by the creditor shall be posted promptly to the obligor's account as specified in regulations of the Board. Such regulations shall prevent a finance charge from being imposed on any obligor if the creditor has received the obligor's payment in readily identifiable form in the amount, manner, location, and time indicated by the creditor to avoid the imposition thereof.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §164, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1514.)

**§ 1666d. Treatment of credit balances**

Whenever a credit balance in excess of \$1 is created in connection with a consumer credit transaction through (1) transmittal of funds to a creditor in excess of the total balance due on an account, (2) rebates of unearned finance charges or insurance premiums, or (3) amounts otherwise owed to or held for the benefit of an obligor, the creditor shall—

(A) credit the amount of the credit balance to the consumer's account;

(B) refund any part of the amount of the remaining credit balance, upon request of the consumer; and

(C) make a good faith effort to refund to the consumer by cash, check, or money order any part of the amount of the credit balance remaining in the account for more than six months, except that no further action is required in any case in which the consumer's current location is not known by the creditor and cannot be traced through the consumer's last known address or telephone number.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §165, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1514; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §621(a), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 184.)

AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 substituted provisions relating to duties of creditor whenever a credit balance in excess

of \$1 is created in connection with a consumer credit transaction, for provisions relating to duties of creditor whenever an obligor transmits funds to creditor in excess of the total balance due on an open end consumer credit account.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

**§ 1666e. Notification of credit card issuer by seller of return of goods, etc., by obligor; credit for account of obligor**

With respect to any sales transaction where a credit card has been used to obtain credit, where the seller is a person other than the card issuer, and where the seller accepts or allows a return of the goods or forgiveness of a debit for services which were the subject of such sale, the seller shall promptly transmit to the credit card issuer, a credit statement with respect thereto and the credit card issuer shall credit the account of the obligor for the amount of the transaction.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §166, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1514.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1610 of this title.

**§ 1666f. Inducements to cardholders by sellers of cash discounts for payments by cash, check or similar means; credit card surcharge prohibition; finance charge for sales transactions involving cash discounts**

**(a) Cash discounts**

With respect to credit card which may be used for extensions of credit in sales transactions in which the seller is a person other than the card issuer, the card issuer may not, by contract, or otherwise, prohibit any such seller from offering a discount to a cardholder to induce the cardholder to pay by cash, check, or similar means rather than use a credit card.

**(b) Finance charge**

With respect to any sales transaction, any discount from the regular price offered by the seller for the purpose of inducing payment by cash, checks, or other means not involving the use of an open-end credit plan or a credit card shall not constitute a finance charge as determined under section 1605 of this title if such discount is offered to all prospective buyers and its availability is disclosed clearly and conspicuously.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §167, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1515; amended Pub. L. 94-222, §3(c)(1), Feb. 27, 1976, 90 Stat. 197; Pub. L. 97-25, title I, §101, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 144.)

AMENDMENTS

1981—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 97-25 substituted "With respect to any sales transaction, any discount from the

regular price offered by the seller for the purpose of inducing payment by cash, checks, or other means not involving the use of an open-end credit plan or a credit card shall not constitute a finance charge as determined under section 1605 of this title if such discount is offered to all prospective buyers and its availability is disclosed clearly and conspicuously" for "With respect to any sales transaction, any discount not in excess of 5 per centum offered by the seller for the purpose of inducing payment by cash, check, or other means not involving the use of a credit card shall not constitute a finance charge as determined under section 1605 of this title, if such discount is offered to all prospective buyers and its availability is disclosed to all prospective buyers clearly and conspicuously in accordance with regulations of the Board".

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-222 temporarily designated existing provisions as par. (1) and added par. (2). See Termination Date of 1976 Amendment note below.

#### TERMINATION DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Section 3(c)(2) of Pub. L. 94-222, as amended by Pub. L. 95-630, title XV, §1501, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3713; Pub. L. 97-25, title II, §201, July 27, 1981, 95 Stat. 44, provided that: "The amendments made by paragraph (1) [amending this section] shall cease to be effective on February 27, 1984."

#### NULLIFICATION OF BOARD RULES AND REGULATIONS UNDER SUBSECTION (b) OF THIS SECTION IN EFFECT ON JULY 26, 1981

Section 103 of Pub. L. 97-25 provided that: "Any rule or regulation of the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System pursuant to section 167(b) of the Truth in Lending Act [subsec. (b) of this section], as such section was in effect on the day before the date of enactment of this Act [July 27, 1981], is null and void."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1602, 1607, 1666j of this title.

#### § 1666g. Tie-in services prohibited for issuance of credit card

Notwithstanding any agreement to the contrary, a card issuer may not require a seller, as a condition to participating in a credit card plan, to open an account with or procure any other service from the card issuer or its subsidiary or agent.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §168, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1515.)

#### § 1666h. Offset of cardholder's indebtedness by issuer of credit card with funds deposited with issuer by cardholder; remedies of creditors under State law not affected

##### (a) Offset against consumer's funds

A card issuer may not take any action to offset a cardholder's indebtedness arising in connection with a consumer credit transaction under the relevant credit card plan against funds of the cardholder held on deposit with the card issuer unless—

(1) such action was previously authorized in writing by the cardholder in accordance with a credit plan whereby the cardholder agrees periodically to pay debts incurred in his open end credit account by permitting the card issuer periodically to deduct all or a portion of such debt from the cardholder's deposit account, and

(2) such action with respect to any outstanding disputed amount not be taken by the card issuer upon request of the cardholder.

In the case of any credit card account in existence on the effective date of this section, the previous written authorization referred to in clause (1) shall not be required until the date (after such effective date) when such account is renewed, but in no case later than one year after such effective date. Such written authorization shall be deemed to exist if the card issuer has previously notified the cardholder that the use of his credit card account will subject any funds which the card issuer holds in deposit accounts of such cardholder to offset against any amounts due and payable on his credit card account which have not been paid in accordance with the terms of the agreement between the card issuer and the cardholder.

##### (b) Attachments and levies

This section does not alter or affect the right under State law of a card issuer to attach or otherwise levy upon funds of a cardholder held on deposit with the card issuer if that remedy is constitutionally available to creditors generally.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §169, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1515.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For effective date of this section, referred to in subsec. (a), see Effective Date note set out under section 1666 of this title.

#### § 1666i. Assertion by cardholder against card issuer of claims and defenses arising out of credit card transaction; prerequisites; limitation on amount of claims or defenses

##### (a) Claims and defenses assertible

Subject to the limitation contained in subsection (b) of this section, a card issuer who has issued a credit card to a cardholder pursuant to an open end consumer credit plan shall be subject to all claims (other than tort claims) and defenses arising out of any transaction in which the credit card is used as a method of payment or extension of credit if (1) the obligor has made a good faith attempt to obtain satisfactory resolution of a disagreement or problem relative to the transaction from the person honoring the credit card; (2) the amount of the initial transaction exceeds \$50; and (3) the place where the initial transaction occurred was in the same State as the mailing address previously provided by the cardholder or was within 100 miles from such address, except that the limitations set forth in clauses (2) and (3) with respect to an obligor's right to assert claims and defenses against a card issuer shall not be applicable to any transaction in which the person honoring the credit card (A) is the same person as the card issuer, (B) is controlled by the card issuer, (C) is under direct or indirect common control with the card issuer, (D) is a franchised dealer in the card issuer's products or services, or (E) has obtained the order for such transaction through a mail solicitation made by or participated in by the card issuer in which the cardholder is solicited to enter into such transaction by using the credit card issued by the card issuer.

##### (b) Amount of claims and defenses assertible

The amount of claims or defenses asserted by the cardholder may not exceed the amount of

credit outstanding with respect to such transaction at the time the cardholder first notifies the card issuer or the person honoring the credit card of such claim or defense. For the purpose of determining the amount of credit outstanding in the preceding sentence, payments and credits to the cardholder's account are deemed to have been applied, in the order indicated, to the payment of: (1) late charges in the order of their entry to the account; (2) finance charges in order of their entry to the account; and (3) debits to the account other than those set forth above, in the order in which each debit entry to the account was made.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §170, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1515.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1637 of this title.

**§ 1666j. Applicability of State laws**

**(a) Consistency of provisions**

This part does not annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this part from complying with, the laws of any State with respect to credit billing practices, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this part, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. The Board is authorized to determine whether such inconsistencies exist. The Board may not determine that any State law is inconsistent with any provision of this part if the Board determines that such law gives greater protection to the consumer.

**(b) Exemptions by Board from credit billing requirements**

The Board shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of this part any class of credit transactions within any State if it determines that under the law of that State that class of transactions is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed under this part or that such law gives greater protection to the consumer, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement.

**(c) Finance charge or other charge for credit for sales transactions involving cash discounts**

Notwithstanding any other provisions of this subchapter, any discount offered under section 1666f(b) of this title shall not be considered a finance charge or other charge for credit under the usury laws of any State or under the laws of any State relating to disclosure of information in connection with credit transactions, or relating to the types, amounts or rates of charges, or to any element or elements of charges permissible under such laws in connection with the extension or use of credit.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §171, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title III, §306, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1516; amended Pub. L. 94-222, §3(d), Feb. 27, 1976, 90 Stat. 198.)

AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-222 added subsec. (c).

PART E—CONSUMER LEASES

PART REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This part is referred to in sections 1604, 1632, 1640 of this title.

**§ 1667. Definitions**

For purposes of this part—

(1) The term “consumer lease” means a contract in the form of a lease or bailment for the use of personal property by a natural person for a period of time exceeding four months, and for a total contractual obligation not exceeding \$25,000, primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, whether or not the lessee has the option to purchase or otherwise become the owner of the property at the expiration of the lease, except that such term shall not include any credit sale as defined in section 1602(g) of this title. Such term does not include a lease for agricultural, business, or commercial purposes, or to a government or governmental agency or instrumentality, or to an organization.

(2) The term “lessee” means a natural person who leases or is offered a consumer lease.

(3) The term “lessor” means a person who is regularly engaged in leasing, offering to lease, or arranging to lease under a consumer lease.

(4) The term “personal property” means any property which is not real property under the laws of the State where situated at the time offered or otherwise made available for lease.

(5) The terms “security” and “security interest” mean any interest in property which secures payment or performance of an obligation.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §181, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 257.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 6 of Pub. L. 94-240 provided that: “This Act [enacting this section and sections 1667a to 1667e of this title, amending sections 1601 and 1640 of this title, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1601 of this title] takes effect one year after the date of its enactment [Mar. 23, 1976].”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1631 of this title.

**§ 1667a. Consumer lease disclosures**

Each lessor shall give a lessee prior to the consummation of the lease a dated written statement on which the lessor and lessee are identified setting out accurately and in a clear and conspicuous manner the following information with respect to that lease, as applicable:

(1) A brief description or identification of the leased property;

(2) The amount of any payment by the lessee required at the inception of the lease;

(3) The amount paid or payable by the lessee for official fees, registration, certificate of title, or license fees or taxes;

(4) The amount of other charges payable by the lessee not included in the periodic payments, a description of the charges and that the lessee shall be liable for the differential, if any, between the anticipated fair market value of the leased property and its appraised

actual value at the termination of the lease, if the lessee has such liability;

(5) A statement of the amount or method of determining the amount of any liabilities the lease imposes upon the lessee at the end of the term and whether or not the lessee has the option to purchase the leased property and at what price and time;

(6) A statement identifying all express warranties and guarantees made by the manufacturer or lessor with respect to the leased property, and identifying the party responsible for maintaining or servicing the leased property together with a description of the responsibility;

(7) A brief description of insurance provided or paid for by the lessor or required of the lessee, including the types and amounts of the coverages and costs;

(8) A description of any security interest held or to be retained by the lessor in connection with the lease and a clear identification of the property to which the security interest relates;

(9) The number, amount, and due dates or periods of payments under the lease and the total amount of such periodic payments;

(10) Where the lease provides that the lessee shall be liable for the anticipated fair market value of the property on expiration of the lease, the fair market value of the property at the inception of the lease, the aggregate cost of the lease on expiration, and the differential between them; and

(11) A statement of the conditions under which the lessee or lessor may terminate the lease prior to the end of the term and the amount or method of determining any penalty or other charge for delinquency, default, late payments, or early termination.

The disclosures required under this section may be made in the lease contract to be signed by the lessee. The Board may provide by regulation that any portion of the information required to be disclosed under this section may be given in the form of estimates where the lessor is not in a position to know exact information.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §182, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 258.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1667d of this title.

**§ 1667b. Lessee's liability on expiration or termination of lease**

**(a) Estimated residual value of property as basis; presumptions; action by lessor for excess liability; mutually agreeable final adjustment**

Where the lessee's liability on expiration of a consumer lease is based on the estimated residual value of the property such estimated residual value shall be a reasonable approximation of the anticipated actual fair market value of the property on lease expiration. There shall be a rebuttable presumption that the estimated residual value is unreasonable to the extent that the estimated residual value exceeds the actual residual value by more than three times the average payment allocable to a monthly period

under the lease. In addition, where the lessee has such liability on expiration of a consumer lease there shall be a rebuttable presumption that the lessor's estimated residual value is not in good faith to the extent that the estimated residual value exceeds the actual residual value by more than three times the average payment allocable to a monthly period under the lease and such lessor shall not collect from the lessee the amount of such excess liability on expiration of a consumer lease unless the lessor brings a successful action with respect to such excess liability. In all actions, the lessor shall pay the lessee's reasonable attorney's fees. The presumptions stated in this section shall not apply to the extent the excess of estimated over actual residual value is due to physical damage to the property beyond reasonable wear and use, or to excessive use, and the lease may set standards for such wear and use if such standards are not unreasonable. Nothing in this subsection shall preclude the right of a willing lessee to make any mutually agreeable final adjustment with respect to such excess residual liability, provided such an agreement is reached after termination of the lease.

**(b) Penalties and charges for delinquency, default, or early termination**

Penalties or other charges for delinquency, default, or early termination may be specified in the lease but only at an amount which is reasonable in the light of the anticipated or actual harm caused by the delinquency, default, or early termination, the difficulties of proof of loss, and the inconvenience or nonfeasibility of otherwise obtaining an adequate remedy.

**(c) Independent professional appraisal of residual value of property at termination of lease; finality**

If a lease has a residual value provision at the termination of the lease, the lessee may obtain at his expense, a professional appraisal of the leased property by an independent third party agreed to by both parties. Such appraisal shall be final and binding on the parties.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §183, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 259.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1667d of this title.

**§ 1667c. Consumer lease advertising; liability of advertising media**

**(a) Contents of lease advertisements**

No advertisement to aid, promote, or assist directly or indirectly any consumer lease shall state the amount of any payment, the number of required payments, or that any or no downpayment or other payment is required at inception of the lease unless the advertisement also states clearly and conspicuously and in accordance with regulations issued by the Board each of the following items of information which is applicable:

(1) That the transaction advertised is a lease.

(2) The amount of any payment required at the inception of the lease or that no such payment is required if that is the case.

(3) The number, amounts, due dates or periods of scheduled payments, and the total of payments under the lease.

(4) That the lessee shall be liable for the differential, if any, between the anticipated fair market value of the leased property and its appraised actual value at the termination of the lease, if the lessee has such liability.

(5) A statement of the amount or method of determining the amount of any liabilities the lease imposes upon the lessee at the end of the term and whether or not the lessee has the option to purchase the leased property and at what price and time.

**(b) Radio advertisements**

**(1) In general**

An advertisement by radio broadcast to aid, promote, or assist, directly or indirectly, any consumer lease shall be deemed to be in compliance with the requirements of subsection (a) of this section if such advertisement clearly and conspicuously—

(A) states the information required by paragraphs (1) and (2) of subsection (a) of this section;

(B) states the number, amounts, due dates or periods of scheduled payments, and the total of such payments under the lease;

(C) includes—

(i) a referral to—

(I) a toll-free telephone number established in accordance with paragraph (2) that may be used by consumers to obtain the information required under subsection (a) of this section; or

(II) a written advertisement that—

(aa) appears in a publication in general circulation in the community served by the radio station on which such advertisement is broadcast during the period beginning 3 days before any such broadcast and ending 10 days after such broadcast; and

(bb) includes the information required to be disclosed under subsection (a) of this section; and

(ii) the name and dates of any publication referred to in clause (i)(II); and

(D) includes any other information which the Board determines necessary to carry out this part.

**(2) Establishment of toll-free number**

**(A) In general**

In the case of a radio broadcast advertisement described in paragraph (1) that includes a referral to a toll-free telephone number, the lessor who offers the consumer lease shall—

(i) establish such a toll-free telephone number not later than the date on which the advertisement including the referral is broadcast;

(ii) maintain such telephone number for a period of not less than 10 days, beginning on the date of any such broadcast; and

(iii) provide the information required under subsection (a) of this section with respect to the lease to any person who calls such number.

**(B) Form of information**

The information required to be provided under subparagraph (A)(iii) shall be provided verbally or, if requested by the consumer, in written form.

**(3) No effect on other law**

Nothing in this subsection shall affect the requirements of Federal law as such requirements apply to advertisement by any medium other than radio broadcast.

**(c) Liability of advertising media**

There is no liability under this section on the part of any owner or personnel, as such, of any medium in which an advertisement appears or through which it is disseminated.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §184, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 259; amended Pub. L. 103-325, title III, §336(a), Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2234.)

AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsecs. (b), (c). Pub. L. 103-325 added subsec. (b) and redesignated former subsec. (b) as (c).

STUDY OF ADVERTISING RULES

Section 336(b) of Pub. L. 103-325 provided that: “Not later than 365 days after the date of enactment of this Act [Sept. 23, 1994], the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System shall submit a report to the Congress on—

“(1) the current rules applicable to credit advertising;

“(2) how such rules could be modified to increase consumer benefit and decrease creditor costs; and

“(3) how such rules could be modified, if at all, for radio advertisements without diminishing consumer protection.”

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1667d of this title.

**§ 1667d. Civil liability of lessors**

**(a) Grounds for maintenance of action**

Any lessor who fails to comply with any requirement imposed under section 1667a or 1667b of this title with respect to any person is liable to such person as provided in section 1640 of this title.

**(b) Additional grounds for maintenance of action; “creditor” defined**

Any lessor who fails to comply with any requirement imposed under section 1667c of this title with respect to any person who suffers actual damage from the violation is liable to such person as provided in section 1640 of this title. For the purposes of this section, the term “creditor” as used in sections 1640 and 1641 of this title shall include a lessor as defined in this part.

**(c) Jurisdiction of courts; time limitation**

Notwithstanding section 1640(e) of this title, any action under this section may be brought in any United States district court or in any other court of competent jurisdiction. Such actions alleging a failure to disclose or otherwise comply with the requirements of this part shall be brought within one year of the termination of the lease agreement.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §185, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 260; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §624, Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 185.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1980—Subsec. (b), Pub. L. 96-221 struck out applicability of section 1614 of this title to term “creditor”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

### § 1667e. Applicability of State laws; exemptions by Board from leasing requirements

(a) This part does not annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this part from complying with, the laws of any State with respect to consumer leases, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this part, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. The Board is authorized to determine whether such inconsistencies exist. The Board may not determine that any State law is inconsistent with any provision of this part if the Board determines that such law gives greater protection and benefit to the consumer.

(b) The Board shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of this part any class of lease transactions within any State if it determines that under the law of that State that class of transactions is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed under this part or that such law gives greater protection and benefit to the consumer, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title I, §186, as added Pub. L. 94-240, §3, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 260.)

#### SUBCHAPTER II—RESTRICTIONS ON GARNISHMENT

### § 1671. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose

#### (a) Disadvantages of garnishment

The Congress finds:

(1) The unrestricted garnishment of compensation due for personal services encourages the making of predatory extensions of credit. Such extensions of credit divert money into excessive credit payments and thereby hinder the production and flow of goods in interstate commerce.

(2) The application of garnishment as a creditors' remedy frequently results in loss of employment by the debtor, and the resulting disruption of employment, production, and consumption constitutes a substantial burden on interstate commerce.

(3) The great disparities among the laws of the several States relating to garnishment have, in effect, destroyed the uniformity of the bankruptcy laws and frustrated the purposes thereof in many areas of the country.

#### (b) Necessity for regulation

On the basis of the findings stated in subsection (a) of this section, the Congress determines that the provisions of this subchapter are necessary and proper for the purpose of carrying into execution the powers of the Congress to regulate commerce and to establish uniform bankruptcy laws.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §301, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 163.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The bankruptcy laws, referred to in subsec. (b), are generally classified to Title 11 (§101 et seq.), Bankruptcy.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 504(c) of Pub. L. 90-321 provided that: “Title III [enacting this section and sections 1672 to 1677 of this title] takes effect on July 1, 1970.”

### § 1672. Definitions

For the purposes of this subchapter:

(a) The term “earnings” means compensation paid or payable for personal services, whether denominated as wages, salary, commission, bonus, or otherwise, and includes periodic payments pursuant to a pension or retirement program.

(b) The term “disposable earnings” means that part of the earnings of any individual remaining after the deduction from those earnings of any amounts required by law to be withheld.

(c) The term “garnishment” means any legal or equitable procedure through which the earnings of any individual are required to be withheld for payment of any debt.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §302, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 163.)

### § 1673. Restriction on garnishment

#### (a) Maximum allowable garnishment

Except as provided in subsection (b) of this section and in section 1675 of this title, the maximum part of the aggregate disposable earnings of an individual for any workweek which is subjected to garnishment may not exceed

(1) 25 per centum of his disposable earnings for that week, or

(2) the amount by which his disposable earnings for that week exceed thirty times the Federal minimum hourly wage prescribed by section 206(a)(1) of title 29 in effect at the time the earnings are payable,

whichever is less. In the case of earnings for any pay period other than a week, the Secretary of Labor shall by regulation prescribe a multiple of the Federal minimum hourly wage equivalent in effect to that set forth in paragraph (2).

#### (b) Exceptions

(1) The restrictions of subsection (a) of this section do not apply in the case of

(A) any order for the support of any person issued by a court of competent jurisdiction or in accordance with an administrative procedure, which is established by State law, which affords substantial due process, and which is subject to judicial review.

(B) any order of any court of the United States having jurisdiction over cases under chapter 13 of title 11.

(C) any debt due for any State or Federal tax.

(2) The maximum part of the aggregate disposable earnings of an individual for any workweek which is subject to garnishment to enforce any order for the support of any person shall not exceed—

(A) where such individual is supporting his spouse or dependent child (other than a spouse or child with respect to whose support such order is used), 50 per centum of such individual's disposable earnings for that week; and

(B) where such individual is not supporting such a spouse or dependent child described in clause (A), 60 per centum of such individual's disposable earnings for that week;

except that, with respect to the disposable earnings of any individual for any workweek, the 50 per centum specified in clause (A) shall be deemed to be 55 per centum and the 60 per centum specified in clause (B) shall be deemed to be 65 per centum, if and to the extent that such earnings are subject to garnishment to enforce a support order with respect to a period which is prior to the twelve-week period which ends with the beginning of such workweek.

**(c) Execution or enforcement of garnishment order or process prohibited**

No court of the United States or any State, and no State (or officer or agency thereof), may make, execute, or enforce any order or process in violation of this section.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §303, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 163; Pub. L. 95-30, title V, §501(e)(1)-(3), May 23, 1977, 91 Stat. 161, 162; Pub. L. 95-598, title III, §312(a), Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2676.)

AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (b)(1)(B). Pub. L. 95-598 substituted “court of the United States having jurisdiction over cases under chapter 13 of title 11” for “court of bankruptcy under chapter XIII of the Bankruptcy Act”.

1977—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 95-30, §501(e)(1), (2), designated existing provisions as par. (1) and existing pars. (1), (2), and (3) as subpars. (A), (B), and (C) thereof, substituted “for the support of any person issued by a court of competent jurisdiction or in accordance with an administrative procedure, which is established by State law, which affords substantial due process, and which is subject to judicial review” for “of any court for the support of any person” in subpar. (A) as so redesignated, and added par. (2).

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 95-30, §501(e)(3), inserted “, and no State (or officer or agency thereof),” after “or any State”.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-598 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95-598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1977 AMENDMENTS

Section 501(e)(5) of Pub. L. 95-30 provided that: “The amendments made by this subsection [amending this section and section 1675 of this title] shall take effect on the first day of the first calendar month which begins after the date of enactment of this Act [May 23, 1977].”

CROSS REFERENCES

Enforcement of legal obligations to provide child support and make alimony payments, see section 659 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1675 of this title; title 5 section 5520a; title 28 sections 3002, 3003; title 29 section 1056; title 42 sections 665, 666, 1396g-1.

**§ 1674. Restriction on discharge from employment by reason of garnishment**

**(a) Termination of employment**

No employer may discharge any employee by reason of the fact that his earnings have been subjected to garnishment for any one indebtedness.

**(b) Penalties**

Whoever willfully violates subsection (a) of this section shall be fined not more than \$1,000, or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §304, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 163.)

**§ 1675. Exemption for State-regulated garnishments**

The Secretary of Labor may by regulation exempt from the provisions of section 1673(a) and (b)(2) of this title garnishments issued under the laws of any State if he determines that the laws of that State provide restrictions on garnishment which are substantially similar to those provided in section 1673(a) and (b)(2) of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §305, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 164; Pub. L. 95-30, title V, §501(e)(4), May 23, 1977, 91 Stat. 162.)

AMENDMENTS

1977—Pub. L. 95-30 substituted “section 1673(a) and (b)(2) of this title” for “section 1673(a) of this title” in two places.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1673 of this title.

**§ 1676. Enforcement by Secretary of Labor**

The Secretary of Labor, acting through the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor, shall enforce the provisions of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §306, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 164.)

**§ 1677. Effect on State laws**

This subchapter does not annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person from complying with, the laws of any State

(1) prohibiting garnishments or providing for more limited garnishment than are allowed under this subchapter, or

(2) prohibiting the discharge of any employee by reason of the fact that his earnings have been subjected to garnishment for more than one indebtedness.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title III, §307, May 29, 1968, 82 Stat. 164.)

SUBCHAPTER III—CREDIT REPORTING  
AGENCIES

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 18 section 1030; title 20 section 1080a; title 50 section 436.

**§ 1681. Congressional findings and statement of purpose**

**(a) Accuracy and fairness of credit reporting**

The Congress makes the following findings:

(1) The banking system is dependent upon fair and accurate credit reporting. Inaccurate credit reports directly impair the efficiency of the banking system, and unfair credit reporting methods undermine the public confidence which is essential to the continued functioning of the banking system.

(2) An elaborate mechanism has been developed for investigating and evaluating the credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, and general reputation of consumers.

(3) Consumer reporting agencies have assumed a vital role in assembling and evaluating consumer credit and other information on consumers.

(4) There is a need to insure that consumer reporting agencies exercise their grave responsibilities with fairness, impartiality, and a respect for the consumer's right to privacy.

**(b) Reasonable procedures**

It is the purpose of this subchapter to require that consumer reporting agencies adopt reasonable procedures for meeting the needs of commerce for consumer credit, personnel, insurance, and other information in a manner which is fair and equitable to the consumer, with regard to the confidentiality, accuracy, relevancy, and proper utilization of such information in accordance with the requirements of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 602, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1128.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 504(d) of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 602, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1136, provided that: "Title VI [enacting this subchapter] takes effect upon the expiration of one hundred and eighty days following the date of its enactment [Oct. 26, 1970]."

SHORT TITLE

This subchapter known as the "Fair Credit Reporting Act", see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of this title.

**§ 1681a. Definitions; rules of construction**

(a) Definitions and rules of construction set forth in this section are applicable for the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) The term "person" means any individual, partnership, corporation, trust, estate, cooperative, association, government or governmental subdivision or agency, or other entity.

(c) The term "consumer" means an individual.

(d) The term "consumer report" means any written, oral, or other communication of any information by a consumer reporting agency bearing on a consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of

living which is used or expected to be used or collected in whole or in part for the purpose of serving as a factor in establishing the consumer's eligibility for (1) credit or insurance to be used primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, or (2) employment purposes, or (3) other purposes authorized under section 1681b of this title. The term does not include (A) any report containing information solely as to transactions or experiences between the consumer and the person making the report; (B) any authorization or approval of a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly by the issuer of a credit card or similar device; or (C) any report in which a person who has been requested by a third party to make a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly to a consumer conveys his decision with respect to such request, if the third party advises the consumer of the name and address of the person to whom the request was made and such person makes the disclosures to the consumer required under section 1681m of this title.

(e) The term "investigative consumer report" means a consumer report or portion thereof in which information on a consumer's character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living is obtained through personal interviews with neighbors, friends, or associates of the consumer reported on or with others with whom he is acquainted or who may have knowledge concerning any such items of information. However, such information shall not include specific factual information on a consumer's credit record obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from a consumer reporting agency when such information was obtained directly from a creditor of the consumer or from the consumer.

(f) The term "consumer reporting agency" means any person which, for monetary fees, dues, or on a cooperative nonprofit basis, regularly engages in whole or in part in the practice of assembling or evaluating consumer credit information or other information on consumers for the purpose of furnishing consumer reports to third parties, and which uses any means or facility of interstate commerce for the purpose of preparing or furnishing consumer reports.

(g) The term "file", when used in connection with information on any consumer, means all of the information on that consumer recorded and retained by a consumer reporting agency regardless of how the information is stored.

(h) The term "employment purposes" when used in connection with a consumer report means a report used for the purpose of evaluating a consumer for employment, promotion, reassignment or retention as an employee.

(i) The term "medical information" means information or records obtained, with the consent of the individual to whom it relates, from licensed physicians or medical practitioners, hospitals, clinics, or other medical or medically related facilities.

**(j) DEFINITIONS RELATING TO CHILD SUPPORT OBLIGATIONS.—**

(1) **OVERDUE SUPPORT.**—The term "overdue support" has the meaning given to such term in section 666(e) of title 42.

(2) **STATE OR LOCAL CHILD SUPPORT ENFORCEMENT AGENCY.**—The term "State or local child

support enforcement agency” means a State or local agency which administers a State or local program for establishing and enforcing child support obligations.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 603, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1128; amended Pub. L. 102-537, § 2(b), Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3531.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1992—Subsec. (j). Pub. L. 102-537 added subsec. (j).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENTS

Section 2(d) of Pub. L. 102-537 provided that: “The amendments made by this section [enacting section 1681s-1 of this title and amending this section] shall take effect on January 1, 1993.”

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1692d, 1692e of this title; title 12 section 2605; title 18 section 1030; title 26 sections 6103, 7609; title 31 section 3701; title 38 section 5701; title 42 section 666; title 50 section 438.

### § 1681b. Permissible purposes of consumer reports

A consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report under the following circumstances and no other:

(1) In response to the order of a court having jurisdiction to issue such an order, or a subpoena issued in connection with proceedings before a Federal grand jury.

(2) In accordance with the written instructions of the consumer to whom it relates.

(3) To a person which it has reason to believe—

(A) intends to use the information in connection with a credit transaction involving the consumer on whom the information is to be furnished and involving the extension of credit to, or review or collection of an account of, the consumer; or

(B) intends to use the information for employment purposes; or

(C) intends to use the information in connection with the underwriting of insurance involving the consumer; or

(D) intends to use the information in connection with a determination of the consumer's eligibility for a license or other benefit granted by a governmental instrumentality required by law to consider an applicant's financial responsibility or status; or

(E) otherwise has a legitimate business need for the information in connection with a business transaction involving the consumer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 604, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1129; amended Pub. L. 101-73, title IX, § 964(c), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 506.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1989—Par. (1). Pub. L. 101-73 inserted “, or a subpoena issued in connection with proceedings before a Federal grand jury” before period at end.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1681a, 1681e, 1681f, 1681s-1, 1681u, 1692d of this title.

### § 1681c. Reporting of obsolete information prohibited

#### (a) Prohibited items

Except as authorized under subsection (b) of this section, no consumer reporting agency may make any consumer report containing any of the following items of information:

(1) cases<sup>1</sup> under title 11 or under the Bankruptcy Act that, from the date of entry of the order for relief or the date of adjudication, as the case may be, antedate the report by more than 10 years.

(2) Suits and judgments which, from date of entry, antedate the report by more than seven years or until the governing statute of limitations has expired, whichever is the longer period.

(3) Paid tax liens which, from date of payment, antedate the report by more than seven years.

(4) Accounts placed for collection or charged to profit and loss which antedate the report by more than seven years.

(5) Records of arrest, indictment, or conviction of crime which, from date of disposition, release, or parole, antedate the report by more than seven years.

(6) Any other adverse item of information which antedates the report by more than seven years.

#### (b) Exempted cases

The provisions of subsection (a) of this section are not applicable in the case of any consumer credit report to be used in connection with—

(1) a credit transaction involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a principal amount of \$50,000 or more;

(2) the underwriting of life insurance involving, or which may reasonably be expected to involve, a face amount of \$50,000 or more; or

(3) the employment of any individual at an annual salary which equals, or which may reasonably be expected to equal \$20,000, or more.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 605, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1129; amended Pub. L. 95-598, title III, § 312(b), Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2676.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Bankruptcy Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1), was act July 1, 1898, ch. 541, 30 Stat. 544, as amended, which was classified to section 1 et seq. of former Title 11, Bankruptcy, prior to its repeal by Pub. L. 95-598, Nov. 6, 1978, 92 Stat. 2549, section 101 of which enacted revised Title 11.

#### AMENDMENTS

1978—Subsec. (a)(1). Pub. L. 95-598 substituted “cases under title 11 or under the Bankruptcy Act that, from the date of entry of the order for relief or the date of adjudication, as the case may be, antedate the report by more than 10 years” for “Bankruptcies which, from date of adjudication of the most recent bankruptcy, antedate the report by more than fourteen years”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1978 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 95-598 effective Oct. 1, 1979, see section 402(a) of Pub. L. 95-598, set out as an Effective Date note preceding section 101 of Title 11, Bankruptcy.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be capitalized.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1681e of this title; title 20 sections 1080a, 1087cc.

**§ 1681d. Disclosure of investigative consumer reports**

**(a) Disclosure of fact of preparation**

A person may not procure or cause to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer unless—

(1) it is clearly and accurately disclosed to the consumer that an investigative consumer report including information as to his character, general reputation, personal characteristics, and mode of living, whichever are applicable, may be made, and such disclosure (A) is made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer, not later than three days after the date on which the report was first requested, and (B) includes a statement informing the consumer of his right to request the additional disclosures provided for under subsection (b) of this section; or

(2) the report is to be used for employment purposes for which the consumer has not specifically applied.

**(b) Disclosure on request of nature and scope of investigation**

Any person who procures or causes to be prepared an investigative consumer report on any consumer shall, upon written request made by the consumer within a reasonable period of time after the receipt by him of the disclosure required by subsection (a)(1) of this section, shall<sup>1</sup> make a complete and accurate disclosure of the nature and scope of the investigation requested. This disclosure shall be made in a writing mailed, or otherwise delivered, to the consumer not later than five days after the date on which the request for such disclosure was received from the consumer or such report was first requested, whichever is the later.

**(c) Limitation on liability upon showing of reasonable procedures for compliance with provisions**

No person may be held liable for any violation of subsection (a) or (b) of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with subsection (a) or (b) of this section.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 606, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1130.)

**§ 1681e. Compliance procedures**

**(a) Identity and purposes of credit users**

Every consumer reporting agency shall maintain reasonable procedures designed to avoid violations of section 1681c of this title and to limit the furnishing of consumer reports to the purposes listed under section 1681b of this title. These procedures shall require that prospective users of the information identify themselves, certify the purposes for which the information is sought, and certify that the information will be used for no other purpose. Every consumer re-

porting agency shall make a reasonable effort to verify the identity of a new prospective user and the uses certified by such prospective user prior to furnishing such user a consumer report. No consumer reporting agency may furnish a consumer report to any person if it has reasonable grounds for believing that the consumer report will not be used for a purpose listed in section 1681b of this title.

**(b) Accuracy of report**

Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares a consumer report it shall follow reasonable procedures to assure maximum possible accuracy of the information concerning the individual about whom the report relates.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 607, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1130.)

**§ 1681f. Disclosures to governmental agencies**

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1681b of this title, a consumer reporting agency may furnish identifying information respecting any consumer, limited to his name, address, former addresses, places of employment, or former places of employment, to a governmental agency.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 608, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1131.)

**§ 1681g. Disclosures to consumers**

**(a) Information on file; sources; report recipients**

Every consumer reporting agency shall, upon request and proper identification of any consumer, clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer:

(1) The nature and substance of all information (except medical information) in its files on the consumer at the time of the request.

(2) The sources of the information; except that the sources of information acquired solely for use in preparing an investigative consumer report and actually used for no other purpose need not be disclosed: *Provided*, That in the event an action is brought under this subchapter, such sources shall be available to the plaintiff under appropriate discovery procedures in the court in which the action is brought.

(3) The recipients of any consumer report on the consumer which it has furnished—

(A) for employment purposes within the two-year period preceding the request, and

(B) for any other purpose within the six-month period preceding the request.

(4) The dates, original payees, and amounts of any checks upon which is based any adverse characterization of the consumer, included in the file at the time of the disclosure.

**(b) Exempt information**

The requirements of subsection (a) of this section respecting the disclosure of sources of information and the recipients of consumer reports do not apply to information received or consumer reports furnished prior to the effective date of this subchapter except to the extent that the matter involved is contained in the files of the consumer reporting agency on that date.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 609, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1131;

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Word "shall" probably should not appear.

amended Pub. L. 103-325, title III, § 339, Sept. 23, 1994, 108 Stat. 2237.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

For the effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (b), see section 504(d) of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1681 of this title.

#### AMENDMENTS

1994—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 103-325 added par. (4).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1681h, 1681j of this title.

### § 1681h. Conditions of disclosure to consumers

#### (a) Times and notice

A consumer reporting agency shall make the disclosures required under section 1681g of this title during normal business hours and on reasonable notice.

#### (b) Identification of consumer

The disclosures required under section 1681g of this title shall be made to the consumer—

- (1) in person if he appears in person and furnishes proper identification; or
- (2) by telephone if he has made a written request, with proper identification, for telephone disclosure and the toll charge, if any, for the telephone call is prepaid by or charged directly to the consumer.

#### (c) Trained personnel

Any consumer reporting agency shall provide trained personnel to explain to the consumer any information furnished to him pursuant to section 1681g of this title.

#### (d) Persons accompanying consumer

The consumer shall be permitted to be accompanied by one other person of his choosing, who shall furnish reasonable identification. A consumer reporting agency may require the consumer to furnish a written statement granting permission to the consumer reporting agency to discuss the consumer's file in such person's presence.

#### (e) Limitation of liability

Except as provided in sections 1681n and 1681o of this title, no consumer may bring any action or proceeding in the nature of defamation, invasion of privacy, or negligence with respect to the reporting of information against any consumer reporting agency, any user of information, or any person who furnishes information to a consumer reporting agency, based on information disclosed pursuant to section 1681g, 1681h, or 1681m of this title, except as to false information furnished with malice or willful intent to injure such consumer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 610, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1131.)

### § 1681i. Procedure in case of disputed accuracy

#### (a) Dispute; reinvestigation

If the completeness or accuracy of any item of information contained in his file is disputed by a consumer, and such dispute is directly con-

veyed to the consumer reporting agency by the consumer, the consumer reporting agency shall within a reasonable period of time reinvestigate and record the current status of that information unless it has reasonable grounds to believe that the dispute by the consumer is frivolous or irrelevant. If after such reinvestigation such information is found to be inaccurate or can no longer be verified, the consumer reporting agency shall promptly delete such information. The presence of contradictory information in the consumer's file does not in and of itself constitute reasonable grounds for believing the dispute is frivolous or irrelevant.

#### (b) Statement of dispute

If the reinvestigation does not resolve the dispute, the consumer may file a brief statement setting forth the nature of the dispute. The consumer reporting agency may limit such statements to not more than one hundred words if it provides the consumer with assistance in writing a clear summary of the dispute.

#### (c) Notification of consumer dispute in subsequent consumer reports

Whenever a statement of a dispute is filed, unless there is reasonable grounds to believe that it is frivolous or irrelevant, the consumer reporting agency shall, in any subsequent consumer report containing the information in question, clearly note that it is disputed by the consumer and provide either the consumer's statement or a clear and accurate codification or summary thereof.

#### (d) Notification of deletion of disputed information

Following any deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or whose accuracy can no longer be verified or any notation as to disputed information, the consumer reporting agency shall, at the request of the consumer, furnish notification that the item has been deleted or the statement, codification or summary pursuant to subsection (b) or (c) of this section to any person specifically designated by the consumer who has within two years prior thereto received a consumer report for employment purposes, or within six months prior thereto received a consumer report for any other purpose, which contained the deleted or disputed information. The consumer reporting agency shall clearly and conspicuously disclose to the consumer his rights to make such a request. Such disclosure shall be made at or prior to the time the information is deleted or the consumer's statement regarding the disputed information is received.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 611, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1132.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1681j of this title; title 20 section 1080a.

### § 1681j. Charges for disclosures

A consumer reporting agency shall make all disclosures pursuant to section 1681g of this title and furnish all consumer reports pursuant to section 1681i(d) of this title without charge to

the consumer if, within thirty days after receipt by such consumer of a notification pursuant to section 1681m of this title or notification from a debt collection agency affiliated with such consumer reporting agency stating that the consumer's credit rating may be or has been adversely affected, the consumer makes a request under section 1681g or 1681i(d) of this title. Otherwise, the consumer reporting agency may impose a reasonable charge on the consumer for making disclosure to such consumer pursuant to section 1681g of this title, the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to making disclosure; and for furnishing notifications, statements, summaries, or codifications to person designated by the consumer pursuant to section 1681i(d) of this title, the charge for which shall be indicated to the consumer prior to furnishing such information and shall not exceed the charge that the consumer reporting agency would impose on each designated recipient for a consumer report except that no charge may be made for notifying such persons of the deletion of information which is found to be inaccurate or which can no longer be verified.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §612, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1132.)

**§ 1681k. Public record information for employment purposes**

A consumer reporting agency which furnishes a consumer report for employment purposes and which for that purpose compiles and reports items of information on consumers which are matters of public record and are likely to have an adverse effect upon a consumer's ability to obtain employment shall—

(1) at the time such public record information is reported to the user of such consumer report, notify the consumer of the fact that public record information is being reported by the consumer reporting agency, together with the name and address of the person to whom such information is being reported; or

(2) maintain strict procedures designed to insure that whenever public record information which is likely to have an adverse effect on a consumer's ability to obtain employment is reported it is complete and up to date. For purposes of this paragraph, items of public record relating to arrests, indictments, convictions, suits, tax liens, and outstanding judgments shall be considered up to date if the current public record status of the item at the time of the report is reported.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §613, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1133.)

**§ 1681l. Restrictions on investigative consumer reports**

Whenever a consumer reporting agency prepares an investigative consumer report, no adverse information in the consumer report (other than information which is a matter of public record) may be included in a subsequent consumer report unless such adverse information has been verified in the process of making such subsequent consumer report, or the adverse information was received within the three-month

period preceding the date the subsequent report is furnished.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §614, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1133.)

**§ 1681m. Requirements on users of consumer reports**

**(a) Adverse action based on reports of consumer reporting agencies**

Whenever credit or insurance for personal, family, or household purposes, or employment involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit or insurance is increased either wholly or partly because of information contained in a consumer report from a consumer reporting agency, the user of the consumer report shall so advise the consumer against whom such adverse action has been taken and supply the name and address of the consumer reporting agency making the report.

**(b) Adverse action based on reports of persons other than consumer reporting agencies**

Whenever credit for personal, family, or household purposes involving a consumer is denied or the charge for such credit is increased either wholly or partly because of information obtained from a person other than a consumer reporting agency bearing upon the consumer's credit worthiness, credit standing, credit capacity, character, general reputation, personal characteristics, or mode of living, the user of such information shall, within a reasonable period of time, upon the consumer's written request for the reasons for such adverse action received within sixty days after learning of such adverse action, disclose the nature of the information to the consumer. The user of such information shall clearly and accurately disclose to the consumer his right to make such written request at the time such adverse action is communicated to the consumer.

**(c) Reasonable procedures to assure compliance**

No person shall be held liable for any violation of this section if he shows by a preponderance of the evidence that at the time of the alleged violation he maintained reasonable procedures to assure compliance with the provisions of subsections (a) and (b) of this section.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §615, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1133.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1681a, 1681h, 1681j of this title.

**§ 1681n. Civil liability for willful noncompliance**

Any consumer reporting agency or user of information which willfully fails to comply with any requirement imposed under this subchapter with respect to any consumer is liable to that consumer in an amount equal to the sum of—

(1) any actual damages sustained by the consumer as a result of the failure;

(2) such amount of punitive damages as the court may allow; and

(3) in the case of any successful action to enforce any liability under this section, the costs of the action together with reasonable attorney's fees as determined by the court.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 616, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1681h of this title.

**§ 1681o. Civil liability for negligent noncompliance**

Any consumer reporting agency or user of information which is negligent in failing to comply with any requirement imposed under this subchapter with respect to any consumer is liable to that consumer in an amount equal to the sum of—

(1) any actual damages sustained by the consumer as a result of the failure;

(2) in the case of any successful action to enforce any liability under this section, the costs of the action together with reasonable attorney's fees as determined by the court.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 617, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1681h of this title.

**§ 1681p. Jurisdiction of courts; limitation of actions**

An action to enforce any liability created under this subchapter may be brought in any appropriate United States district court without regard to the amount in controversy, or in any other court of competent jurisdiction, within two years from the date on which the liability arises, except that where a defendant has materially and willfully misrepresented any information required under this subchapter to be disclosed to an individual and the information so misrepresented is material to the establishment of the defendant's liability to that individual under this subchapter, the action may be brought at any time within two years after discovery by the individual of the misrepresentation.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 618, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134.)

**§ 1681q. Obtaining information under false pretenses**

Any person who knowingly and willfully obtains information on a consumer from a consumer reporting agency under false pretenses shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 619, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134.)

**§ 1681r. Unauthorized disclosures by officers or employees**

Any officer or employee of a consumer reporting agency who knowingly and willfully provides information concerning an individual from the agency's files to a person not authorized to receive that information shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, § 620, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, § 601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134.)

**§ 1681s. Administrative enforcement**

**(a) Federal Trade Commission; powers**

Compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter shall be enforced under the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.] by the Federal Trade Commission with respect to consumer reporting agencies and all other persons subject thereto, except to the extent that enforcement of the requirements imposed under this subchapter is specifically committed to some other government agency under subsection (b) hereof. For the purpose of the exercise by the Federal Trade Commission of its functions and powers under the Federal Trade Commission Act, a violation of any requirement or prohibition imposed under this subchapter shall constitute an unfair or deceptive act or practice in commerce in violation of section 5(a) of the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 45(a)] and shall be subject to enforcement by the Federal Trade Commission under section 5(b) thereof [15 U.S.C. 45(b)] with respect to any consumer reporting agency or person subject to enforcement by the Federal Trade Commission pursuant to this subsection, irrespective of whether that person is engaged in commerce or meets any other jurisdictional tests in the Federal Trade Commission Act. The Federal Trade Commission shall have such procedural, investigative, and enforcement powers, including the power to issue procedural rules in enforcing compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter and to require the filing of reports, the production of documents, and the appearance of witnesses as though the applicable terms and conditions of the Federal Trade Commission Act were part of this subchapter. Any person violating any of the provisions of this subchapter shall be subject to the penalties and entitled to the privileges and immunities provided in the Federal Trade Commission Act as though the applicable terms and provisions thereof were part of this subchapter.

**(b) Other administrative bodies**

Compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter with respect to consumer reporting agencies and persons who use consumer reports from such agencies shall be enforced under—

(1) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], in the case of—

(A) national banks, and Federal branches and Federal agencies of foreign banks, by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), branches and agencies of foreign banks (other than Federal branches, Federal agencies, and insured State branches of foreign banks), commercial lending companies owned or controlled by foreign banks, and organizations operating under section 25 or 25(a)<sup>1</sup> of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.], by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System; and

(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

of the Federal Reserve System) and insured State branches of foreign banks, by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(2) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], by the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(3) the Federal Credit Union Act [12 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.], by the Administrator of the National Credit Union Administration with respect to any Federal credit union;

(4) subtitle IV of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board;

(5) part A of subtitle VII of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation with respect to any air carrier or foreign air carrier subject to that part; and

(6) the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921 [7 U.S.C. 181 et seq.] (except as provided in section 406 of that Act [7 U.S.C. 226, 227]), by the Secretary of Agriculture with respect to any activities subject to that Act.

The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).

#### (c) Enforcement under other authority

For the purpose of the exercise by any agency referred to in subsection (b) of this section of its powers under any Act referred to in that subsection, a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. In addition to its powers under any provision of law specifically referred to in subsection (b) of this section, each of the agencies referred to in that subsection may exercise, for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter any other authority conferred on it by law.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §621, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1134; amended Pub. L. 98-443, §9(n), Oct. 4, 1984, 98 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, §744(l), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, §212(c), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2300; Pub. L. 102-550, title XVI, §1604(a)(6), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4082; Pub. L. 104-88, title III, §314, Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 948.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of this title and Tables.

Section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), which is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, was renumbered section 25A of that act by Pub. L. 102-242, title I, §142(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2281. Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Federal Credit Union Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is act June 26, 1934, ch. 750, 48 Stat. 1216, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 14 (§1751 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1751 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), is act Aug. 15, 1921, ch. 64, 42 Stat. 159, as amended, which is classified to chapter 9 (§181 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 181 of Title 7 and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(4), “subtitle IV of title 49” substituted for “the Acts to regulate commerce” on authority of Pub. L. 95-473, §3(b), Oct. 17, 1978, 92 Stat. 1466, the first section of which enacted subtitle IV of Title 49, Transportation.

In subsec. (b)(5), “part A of subtitle VII of title 49” substituted for “the Federal Aviation Act of 1958 [49 App. U.S.C. 1301 et seq.]” and “that part” substituted for “that Act” on authority of Pub. L. 103-272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 104-88 substituted “Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board” for “Interstate Commerce Commission with respect to any common carrier subject to those Acts”.

1992—Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 102-550 substituted semicolon for period at end.

1991—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-242, §212(c)(2), inserted at end “The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).”

Pub. L. 102-242, §212(c)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: “section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, in the case of:

“(A) national banks, by the Comptroller of the Currency;

“(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), by the Federal Reserve Board; and

“(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System), by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.”

1989—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101-73 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “section 5(d) of the Home Owners Loan Act of 1933, section 407 of the National Housing Act, and sections 6(i) and 17 of the Federal Home Loan Bank Act, by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board (acting directly or through the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation), in the case of any institution subject to any of those provisions;”.

1984—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 98-443 substituted “Secretary of Transportation” for “Civil Aeronautics Board”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-88 effective Jan. 1, 1996, see section 2 of Pub. L. 104-88, set out as an Effective Date note under section 701 of Title 49, Transportation.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-550 effective as if included in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991, Pub. L. 102-242, as of Dec. 19, 1991, see section 1609(a) of Pub. L. 102-550, set out as a note under section 191 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-443 effective Jan. 1, 1985, see section 9(v) of Pub. L. 98-443, set out as a note under

section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

**§ 1681s-1. Information on overdue child support obligations**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter, a consumer reporting agency shall include in any consumer report furnished by the agency in accordance with section 1681b of this title, any information on the failure of the consumer to pay overdue support which—

(1) is provided—

(A) to the consumer reporting agency by a State or local child support enforcement agency; or

(B) to the consumer reporting agency and verified by any local, State, or Federal Government agency; and

(2) antedates the report by 7 years or less.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §622, as added Pub. L. 102-537, §2(a), Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3531.)

**PRIOR PROVISIONS**

A prior section 622 of Pub. L. 90-321 was renumbered section 623 and is classified to section 1681t of this title.

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section effective Jan. 1, 1993, see section 2(d) of Pub. L. 102-537, set out as an Effective Date of 1992 Amendment note under section 1681a of this title.

**§ 1681t. Relation to State laws**

This subchapter does not annul, alter, affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this subchapter from complying with the laws of any State with respect to the collection, distribution, or use of any information on consumers, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this subchapter, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §623, formerly §622, as added Pub. L. 91-508, title VI, §601, Oct. 26, 1970, 84 Stat. 1136; renumbered §623, Pub. L. 102-537, §2(a), Oct. 27, 1992, 106 Stat. 3531.)

**§ 1681u. Disclosures to FBI for counterintelligence purposes**

**(a) Identity of financial institutions**

Notwithstanding section 1681b of this title or any other provision of this subchapter, a consumer reporting agency shall furnish to the Federal Bureau of Investigation the names and addresses of all financial institutions (as that term is defined in section 3401 of title 12) at which a consumer maintains or has maintained an account, to the extent that information is in the files of the agency, when presented with a written request for that information, signed by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, or the Director's designee, which certifies compliance with this section. The Director or the Director's designee may make such a certification only if the Director or the Director's designee has determined in writing that—

(1) such information is necessary for the conduct of an authorized foreign counterintelligence investigation; and

(2) there are specific and articulable facts giving reason to believe that the consumer—

(A) is a foreign power (as defined in section 1801 of title 50) or a person who is not a United States person (as defined in such section 1801 of title 50) and is an official of a foreign power; or

(B) is an agent of a foreign power and is engaging or has engaged in an act of international terrorism (as that term is defined in section 1801(c) of title 50) or clandestine intelligence activities that involve or may involve a violation of criminal statutes of the United States.

**(b) Identifying information**

Notwithstanding the provisions of section 1681b of this title or any other provision of this subchapter, a consumer reporting agency shall furnish identifying information respecting a consumer, limited to name, address, former addresses, places of employment, or former places of employment, to the Federal Bureau of Investigation when presented with a written request, signed by the Director or the Director's designee, which certifies compliance with this subsection. The Director or the Director's designee may make such a certification only if the Director or the Director's designee has determined in writing that—

(1) such information is necessary to the conduct of an authorized counterintelligence investigation; and

(2) there is information giving reason to believe that the consumer has been, or is about to be, in contact with a foreign power or an agent of a foreign power (as defined in section 1801 of title 50).

**(c) Court order for disclosure of consumer reports**

Notwithstanding section 1681b of this title or any other provision of this subchapter, if requested in writing by the Director of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, or a designee of the Director, a court may issue an order ex parte directing a consumer reporting agency to furnish a consumer report to the Federal Bureau of Investigation, upon a showing in camera that—

(1) the consumer report is necessary for the conduct of an authorized foreign counterintelligence investigation; and

(2) there are specific and articulable facts giving reason to believe that the consumer whose consumer report is sought—

(A) is an agent of a foreign power, and

(B) is engaging or has engaged in an act of international terrorism (as that term is defined in section 1801(c) of title 50) or clandestine intelligence activities that involve or may involve a violation of criminal statutes of the United States.

The terms of an order issued under this subsection shall not disclose that the order is issued for purposes of a counterintelligence investigation.

**(d) Confidentiality**

No consumer reporting agency or officer, employee, or agent of a consumer reporting agency shall disclose to any person, other than those officers, employees, or agents of a consumer reporting agency necessary to fulfill the require-

ment to disclose information to the Federal Bureau of Investigation under this section, that the Federal Bureau of Investigation has sought or obtained the identity of financial institutions or a consumer report respecting any consumer under subsection (a), (b), or (c) of this section, and no consumer reporting agency or officer, employee, or agent of a consumer reporting agency shall include in any consumer report any information that would indicate that the Federal Bureau of Investigation has sought or obtained such information or a consumer report.

**(e) Payment of fees**

The Federal Bureau of Investigation shall, subject to the availability of appropriations, pay to the consumer reporting agency assembling or providing report or information in accordance with procedures established under this section a fee for reimbursement for such costs as are reasonably necessary and which have been directly incurred in searching, reproducing, or transporting books, papers, records, or other data required or requested to be produced under this section.

**(f) Limit on dissemination**

The Federal Bureau of Investigation may not disseminate information obtained pursuant to this section outside of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, except to other Federal agencies as may be necessary for the approval or conduct of a foreign counterintelligence investigation, or, where the information concerns a person subject to the Uniform Code of Military Justice, to appropriate investigative authorities within the military department concerned as may be necessary for the conduct of a joint foreign counterintelligence investigation.

**(g) Rules of construction**

Nothing in this section shall be construed to prohibit information from being furnished by the Federal Bureau of Investigation pursuant to a subpoena or court order, in connection with a judicial or administrative proceeding to enforce the provisions of this subchapter. Nothing in this section shall be construed to authorize or permit the withholding of information from the Congress.

**(h) Reports to Congress**

On a semiannual basis, the Attorney General shall fully inform the Permanent Select Committee on Intelligence and the Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of the House of Representatives, and the Select Committee on Intelligence and the Committee on Banking, Housing, and Urban Affairs of the Senate concerning all requests made pursuant to subsections (a), (b), and (c) of this section.

**(i) Damages**

Any agency or department of the United States obtaining or disclosing any consumer reports, records, or information contained therein in violation of this section is liable to the consumer to whom such consumer reports, records, or information relate in an amount equal to the sum of—

- (1) \$100, without regard to the volume of consumer reports, records, or information involved;

- (2) any actual damages sustained by the consumer as a result of the disclosure;

- (3) if the violation is found to have been willful or intentional, such punitive damages as a court may allow; and

- (4) in the case of any successful action to enforce liability under this subsection, the costs of the action, together with reasonable attorney fees, as determined by the court.

**(j) Disciplinary actions for violations**

If a court determines that any agency or department of the United States has violated any provision of this section and the court finds that the circumstances surrounding the violation raise questions of whether or not an officer or employee of the agency or department acted willfully or intentionally with respect to the violation, the agency or department shall promptly initiate a proceeding to determine whether or not disciplinary action is warranted against the officer or employee who was responsible for the violation.

**(k) Good-faith exception**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter, any consumer reporting agency or agent or employee thereof making disclosure of consumer reports or identifying information pursuant to this subsection in good-faith reliance upon a certification of the Federal Bureau of Investigation pursuant to provisions of this section shall not be liable to any person for such disclosure under this subchapter, the constitution of any State, or any law or regulation of any State or any political subdivision of any State.

**(l) Limitation of remedies**

Notwithstanding any other provision of this subchapter, the remedies and sanctions set forth in this section shall be the only judicial remedies and sanctions for violation of this section.

**(m) Injunctive relief**

In addition to any other remedy contained in this section, injunctive relief shall be available to require compliance with the procedures of this section. In the event of any successful action under this subsection, costs together with reasonable attorney fees, as determined by the court, may be recovered.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VI, §624, as added Pub. L. 104-93, title VI, §601(a), Jan. 6, 1996, 109 Stat. 974.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

This subchapter, referred to in subsec. (g), was in the original, “this Act” and was translated as reading “this title”, meaning title VI of Pub. L. 90-321, known as the Fair Credit Reporting Act, to reflect the probable intent of Congress.

CHANGE OF NAME

Committee on Banking, Finance and Urban Affairs of House of Representatives treated as referring to Committee on Banking and Financial Services of House of Representatives by section 1(a) of Pub. L. 104-14, set out as a note preceding section 21 of Title 2, The Congress.

SUBCHAPTER IV—EQUAL CREDIT  
OPPORTUNITY

SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 12 sections 1708, 4545; title 42 section 3608.

**§ 1691. Scope of prohibition**

**(a) Activities constituting discrimination**

It shall be unlawful for any creditor to discriminate against any applicant, with respect to any aspect of a credit transaction—

(1) on the basis of race, color, religion, national origin, sex or marital status, or age (provided the applicant has the capacity to contract);

(2) because all or part of the applicant's income derives from any public assistance program; or

(3) because the applicant has in good faith exercised any right under this chapter.

**(b) Activities not constituting discrimination**

It shall not constitute discrimination for purposes of this subchapter for a creditor—

(1) to make an inquiry of marital status if such inquiry is for the purpose of ascertaining the creditor's rights and remedies applicable to the particular extension of credit and not to discriminate in a determination of credit-worthiness;

(2) to make an inquiry of the applicant's age or of whether the applicant's income derives from any public assistance program if such inquiry is for the purpose of determining the amount and probable continuance of income levels, credit history, or other pertinent element of credit-worthiness as provided in regulations of the Board;

(3) to use any empirically derived credit system which considers age if such system is demonstrably and statistically sound in accordance with regulations of the Board, except that in the operation of such system the age of an elderly applicant may not be assigned a negative factor or value; or

(4) to make an inquiry or to consider the age of an elderly applicant when the age of such applicant is to be used by the creditor in the extension of credit in favor of such applicant.

**(c) Additional activities not constituting discrimination**

It is not a violation of this section for a creditor to refuse to extend credit offered pursuant to—

(1) any credit assistance program expressly authorized by law for an economically disadvantaged class of persons;

(2) any credit assistance program administered by a nonprofit organization for its members or an economically disadvantaged class of persons; or

(3) any special purpose credit program offered by a profit-making organization to meet special social needs which meets standards prescribed in regulations by the Board;

if such refusal is required by or made pursuant to such program.

**(d) Reason for adverse action; procedure applicable; "adverse action" defined**

(1) Within thirty days (or such longer reasonable time as specified in regulations of the

Board for any class of credit transaction) after receipt of a completed application for credit, a creditor shall notify the applicant of its action on the application.

(2) Each applicant against whom adverse action is taken shall be entitled to a statement of reasons for such action from the creditor. A creditor satisfies this obligation by—

(A) providing statements of reasons in writing as a matter of course to applicants against whom adverse action is taken; or

(B) giving written notification of adverse action which discloses (i) the applicant's right to a statement of reasons within thirty days after receipt by the creditor of a request made within sixty days after such notification, and (ii) the identity of the person or office from which such statement may be obtained. Such statement may be given orally if the written notification advises the applicant of his right to have the statement of reasons confirmed in writing on written request.

(3) A statement of reasons meets the requirements of this section only if it contains the specific reasons for the adverse action taken.

(4) Where a creditor has been requested by a third party to make a specific extension of credit directly or indirectly to an applicant, the notification and statement of reasons required by this subsection may be made directly by such creditor, or indirectly through the third party, provided in either case that the identity of the creditor is disclosed.

(5) The requirements of paragraph (2), (3), or (4) may be satisfied by verbal statements or notifications in the case of any creditor who did not act on more than one hundred and fifty applications during the calendar year preceding the calendar year in which the adverse action is taken, as determined under regulations of the Board.

(6) For purposes of this subsection, the term "adverse action" means a denial or revocation of credit, a change in the terms of an existing credit arrangement, or a refusal to grant credit in substantially the amount or on substantially the terms requested. Such term does not include a refusal to extend additional credit under an existing credit arrangement where the applicant is delinquent or otherwise in default, or where such additional credit would exceed a previously established credit limit.

**(e) Appraisals; copies of reports to applicants; costs**

Each creditor shall promptly furnish an applicant, upon written request by the applicant made within a reasonable period of time of the application, a copy of the appraisal report used in connection with the applicant's application for a loan that is or would have been secured by a lien on residential real property. The creditor may require the applicant to reimburse the creditor for the cost of the appraisal.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, § 701, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, § 503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1521; amended Pub. L. 94-239, § 2, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 251; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, § 223(d), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2306.)

AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 102-242 added subsec. (e).

1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-239 designated existing provisions as cl. (1), expanded prohibition against discrimination to include race, color, religion, national origin and age, and added cls. (2) and (3).

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-239 designated existing provisions as cl. (1) and added cls. (2) to (4).

Subsecs. (c), (d). Pub. L. 94-239 added subsecs. (c) and (d).

#### EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 708, formerly §707, of title VII of Pub. L. 90-321, as added by Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1525, renumbered and amended by Pub. L. 94-239, §§7, 8, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 255, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter and provisions set out as notes under section 1691 of this title] takes effect upon the expiration of one year after the date of its enactment [Oct. 28, 1974]. The amendments made by the Equal Credit Opportunity Act Amendments of 1976 [enacting section 1691f of this title, amending this section and sections 1691b, 1691c, 1691d, and 1691e of this title, repealing section 1609 of this title, enacting provisions set out as notes under this section, and repealing provisions set out as a note under this section] shall take effect on the date of enactment thereof [Mar. 23, 1976] and shall apply to any violation occurring on or after such date, except that the amendments made to section 701 of the Equal Credit Opportunity Act [this section] shall take effect 12 months after the date of enactment [Mar. 23, 1976]."

#### SHORT TITLE

This subchapter known as the "Equal Credit Opportunity Act", see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of this title.

#### CONGRESSIONAL FINDINGS AND STATEMENT OF PURPOSE

Section 502 of Pub. L. 93-495 provided that: "The Congress finds that there is a need to insure that the various financial institutions and other firms engaged in the extensions of credit exercise their responsibility to make credit available with fairness, impartiality, and without discrimination on the basis of sex or marital status. Economic stabilization would be enhanced and competition among the various financial institutions and other firms engaged in the extension of credit would be strengthened by an absence of discrimination on the basis of sex or marital status, as well as by the informed use of credit which Congress has heretofore sought to promote. It is the purpose of this Act [see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of this title] to require that financial institutions and other firms engaged in the extension of credit make that credit equally available to all credit-worthy customers without regard to sex or marital status."

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1691d, 1691e of this title.

#### § 1691a. Definitions; rules of construction

(a) The definitions and rules of construction set forth in this section are applicable for the purposes of this subchapter.

(b) The term "applicant" means any person who applies to a creditor directly for an extension, renewal, or continuation of credit, or applies to a creditor indirectly by use of an existing credit plan for an amount exceeding a previously established credit limit.

(c) The term "Board" refers to the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

(d) The term "credit" means the right granted by a creditor to a debtor to defer payment of debt or to incur debts and defer its payment or to purchase property or services and defer payment therefor.

(e) The term "creditor" means any person who regularly extends, renews, or continues credit; any person who regularly arranges for the extension, renewal, or continuation of credit; or any assignee of an original creditor who participates in the decision to extend, renew, or continue credit.

(f) The term "person" means a natural person, a corporation, government or governmental subdivision or agency, trust, estate, partnership, cooperative, or association.

(g) Any reference to any requirement imposed under this subchapter or any provision thereof includes reference to the regulations of the Board under this subchapter or the provision thereof in question.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §702, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1522.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1691d of this title.

#### § 1691b. Promulgation of regulations by Board; establishment of Consumer Advisory Council by Board; duties, membership, etc., of Council

##### (a) Regulations

(1) The Board shall prescribe regulations to carry out the purposes of this subchapter. These regulations may contain but are not limited to such classifications, differentiation, or other provision, and may provide for such adjustments and exceptions for any class of transactions, as in the judgment of the Board are necessary or proper to effectuate the purposes of this subchapter, to prevent circumvention or evasion thereof, or to facilitate or substantiate compliance therewith.

(2) Such regulations may exempt from the provisions of this subchapter any class of transactions that are not primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, or business or commercial loans made available by a financial institution, except that a particular type within a class of such transactions may be exempted if the Board determines, after making an express finding that the application of this subchapter or of any provision of this subchapter of such transaction would not contribute substantially to effecting the purposes of this subchapter.

(3) An exemption granted pursuant to paragraph (2) shall be for no longer than five years and shall be extended only if the Board makes a subsequent determination, in the manner described by such paragraph, that such exemption remains appropriate.

(4) Pursuant to Board regulations, entities making business or commercial loans shall maintain such records or other data relating to such loans as may be necessary to evidence compliance with this subsection or enforce any action pursuant to the authority of this chapter. In no event shall such records or data be maintained for a period of less than one year. The Board shall promulgate regulations to implement this paragraph in the manner prescribed by chapter 5 of title 5.

(5) The Board shall provide in regulations that an applicant for a business or commercial loan

shall be provided a written notice of such applicant's right to receive a written statement of the reasons for the denial of such loan.

**(b) Consumer Advisory Council**

The Board shall establish a Consumer Advisory Council to advise and consult with it in the exercise of its functions under this chapter and to advise and consult with it concerning other consumer related matters it may place before the Council. In appointing the members of the Council, the Board shall seek to achieve a fair representation of the interests of creditors and consumers. The Council shall meet from time to time at the call of the Board. Members of the Council who are not regular full-time employees of the United States shall, while attending meetings of such Council, be entitled to receive compensation at a rate fixed by the Board, but not exceeding \$100 per day, including travel time. Such members may be allowed travel expenses, including transportation and subsistence, while away from their homes or regular place of business.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §703, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1522; amended Pub. L. 94-239, §3(a), Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 252; Pub. L. 100-533, title III, §301, Oct. 25, 1988, 102 Stat. 2692.)

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100-533 amended subsec. (a) generally. Prior to amendment, subsec. (a) read as follows: "The Board shall prescribe regulations to carry out the purposes of this subchapter. These regulations may contain but are not limited to such classifications, differentiation, or other provision, and may provide for such adjustments and exceptions for any class of transactions, as in the judgment of the Board are necessary or proper to effectuate the purposes of this subchapter, to prevent circumvention or evasion thereof, or to facilitate or substantiate compliance therewith. In particular, such regulations may exempt from one or more of the provisions of this subchapter any class of transactions not primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, if the Board makes an express finding that the application of such provision or provisions would not contribute substantially to carrying out the purposes of this subchapter. Such regulations shall be prescribed as soon as possible after the date of enactment of this Act, but in no event later than the effective date of this Act."

1976—Pub. L. 94-239 designated existing provisions as subsec. (a), inserted provisions exempting from regulations of this subchapter any class of transactions not primarily for personal, family, or household purposes to be determined by the Board, and added subsec. (b).

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-239 effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 94-239, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1691 of this title.

**§ 1691c. Administrative enforcement**

**(a) Enforcing agencies**

Compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter shall be enforced under:

(1) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], in the case of—

(A) national banks, and Federal branches and Federal agencies of foreign banks, by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), branches and agencies of foreign banks (other than Federal branches, Federal agencies, and insured State branches of foreign banks), commercial lending companies owned or controlled by foreign banks, and organizations operating under section 25 or 25(a)<sup>1</sup> of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.], by the Board; and

(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System) and insured State branches of foreign banks, by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(2) Section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], by the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.

(3) The Federal Credit Union Act [12 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.], by the Administrator of the National Credit Union Administration with respect to any Federal Credit Union.

(4) Subtitle IV of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board.

(5) Part A of subtitle VII of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation with respect to any air carrier or foreign air carrier subject to that part.

(6) The Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921 [7 U.S.C. 181 et seq.] (except as provided in section 406 of that Act [7 U.S.C. 226, 227]), by the Secretary of Agriculture with respect to any activities subject to that Act.

(7) The Farm Credit Act of 1971 [12 U.S.C. 2001 et seq.], by the Farm Credit Administration with respect to any Federal land bank, Federal land bank association, Federal intermediate credit bank, and production credit association;

(8) The Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], by the Securities and Exchange Commission with respect to brokers and dealers; and

(9) The Small Business Investment Act of 1958 [15 U.S.C. 661 et seq.], by the Small Business Administration, with respect to small business investment companies.

The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).

**(b) Violations of subchapter deemed violations of preexisting statutory requirements; additional agency powers**

For the purpose of the exercise by any agency referred to in subsection (a) of this section of its powers under any Act referred to in that subsection, a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. In addition to its powers under any provision of law specifically referred to in subsection (a) of this section, each of the agencies referred to in that subsection may exercise for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter, any other authority conferred on it by law. The exercise of the authorities of any of the agencies referred to in subsection (a) of this section for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall in no way preclude the exercise of such authorities for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any other provision of law not relating to the prohibition of discrimination on the basis of sex or marital status with respect to any aspect of a credit transaction.

**(c) Overall enforcement authority of Federal Trade Commission**

Except to the extent that enforcement of the requirements imposed under this subchapter is specifically committed to some other Government agency under subsection (a) of this section, the Federal Trade Commission shall enforce such requirements. For the purpose of the exercise by the Federal Trade Commission of its functions and powers under the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.], a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. All of the functions and powers of the Federal Trade Commission under the Federal Trade Commission Act are available to the Commission to enforce compliance by any person with the requirements imposed under this subchapter, irrespective of whether that person is engaged in commerce or meets any other jurisdictional tests in the Federal Trade Commission Act, including the power to enforce any Federal Reserve Board regulation promulgated under this subchapter in the same manner as if the violation had been a violation of a Federal Trade Commission trade regulation rule.

**(d) Rules and regulations by enforcing agencies**

The authority of the Board to issue regulations under this subchapter does not impair the authority of any other agency designated in this section to make rules respecting its own procedures in enforcing compliance with requirements imposed under this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §704, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1522; amended Pub. L. 94-239, §4, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 253; Pub. L. 98-443, §9(n), Oct. 4, 1984, 98 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, §744(m), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 439; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, §212(d), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2300; Pub. L. 102-550, title XVI, §1604(a)(7), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4082; Pub. L. 104-88, title III, §315, Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 948.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(B), which is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, was renumbered section 25A of that act by Pub. L. 102-242, title I, §142(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2281. Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Federal Credit Union Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is act June 26, 1934, ch. 750, 48 Stat. 1216, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 14 (§1751 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1751 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921, referred to in subsec. (a)(6), is act Aug. 15, 1921, ch. 64, 42 Stat. 159, as amended, which is classified to chapter 9 (§181 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 181 of Title 7 and Tables.

The Farm Credit Act of 1971, referred to in subsec. (a)(7), is Pub. L. 92-181, Dec. 10, 1971, 85 Stat. 583, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 23 (§2001 et seq.) of Title 12, Banks and Banking. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 2001 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a)(8), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Codification note set out under section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Small Business Investment Act of 1958, referred to in subsec. (a)(9), is Pub. L. 85-699, Aug. 21, 1958, 72 Stat. 689, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 14B (§661 et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 661 of this title and Tables.

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of this title and Tables.

CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(4), “Subtitle IV of title 49” substituted for “The Acts to regulate commerce” on authority of Pub. L. 95-473, §3(b), Oct. 17, 1978, 92 Stat. 1466, the first section of which enacted subtitle IV of Title 49, Transportation.

In subsec. (a)(5), “Part A of subtitle VII of title 49” substituted for “The Federal Aviation Act of 1958 [49 App. U.S.C. 1301 et seq.]” and “that part” substituted for “that Act” on authority of Pub. L. 103-272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49.

AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (a)(4). Pub. L. 104-88 substituted “Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board” for “Interstate Commerce Commission with respect to any common carrier subject to those Acts”.

1992—Subsec. (a)(1)(C). Pub. L. 102-550 substituted semicolon for period at end.

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-242, §212(d)(2), inserted at end “The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).”

Pub. L. 102-242, §212(d)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: “Section 8 of Federal Deposit Insurance Act, in the case of—

“(A) national banks, by the Comptroller of the Currency,

“(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), by the Federal Reserve Board,

“(C) banks the deposits or accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System), by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.”

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-73 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “Section 5(d) of the Home Owners’ Loan Act of 1933, section 407 of the National Housing Act, and sections 6(i) and 17 of the Federal Home Loan Bank Act, by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board (acting directly or through the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation), in the case of any institution subject to any of those provisions.”

1984—Subsec. (a)(5). Pub. L. 98-443 substituted “Secretary of Transportation” for “Civil Aeronautics Board”.

1976—Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-239 inserted provisions giving the Federal Trade Commission power to enforce any regulation of the Federal Reserve Board promulgated under this subchapter.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-88 effective Jan. 1, 1996, see section 2 of Pub. L. 104-88, set out as an Effective Date note under section 701 of Title 49, Transportation.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-550 effective as if included in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improvement Act of 1991, Pub. L. 102-242, as of Dec. 19, 1991, see section 1609(a) of Pub. L. 102-550, set out as a note under section 191 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-443 effective Jan. 1, 1985, see section 9(v) of Pub. L. 98-443, set out as a note under section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-239 effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1691 of this title.

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1691e, 1691f of this title; title 12 section 4545.

### § 1691d. Applicability of other laws

#### (a) Requests for signature of husband and wife for creation of valid lien, etc.

A request for the signature of both parties to a marriage for the purpose of creating a valid lien, passing clear title, waiving inchoate rights to property, or assigning earnings, shall not constitute discrimination under this subchapter: *Provided, however*, That this provision shall not be construed to permit a creditor to take sex or marital status into account in connection with the evaluation of creditworthiness of any applicant.

#### (b) State property laws affecting creditworthiness

Consideration or application of State property laws directly or indirectly affecting creditworthiness shall not constitute discrimination for purposes of this subchapter.

#### (c) State laws prohibiting separate extension of consumer credit to husband and wife

Any provision of State law which prohibits the separate extension of consumer credit to each party to a marriage shall not apply in any case where each party to a marriage voluntarily applies for separate credit from the same creditor: *Provided*, That in any case where such a State law is so preempted, each party to the marriage shall be solely responsible for the debt so contracted.

#### (d) Combining credit accounts of husband and wife with same creditor to determine permissible finance charges or loan ceilings under Federal or State laws

When each party to a marriage separately and voluntarily applies for and obtains separate credit accounts with the same creditor, those accounts shall not be aggregated or otherwise combined for purposes of determining permissible finance charges or permissible loan ceilings under the laws of any State or of the United States.

#### (e) Election of remedies under subchapter or State law; nature of relief determining applicability

Where the same act or omission constitutes a violation of this subchapter and of applicable State law, a person aggrieved by such conduct may bring a legal action to recover monetary damages either under this subchapter or under such State law, but not both. This election of remedies shall not apply to court actions in which the relief sought does not include monetary damages or to administrative actions.

#### (f) Compliance with inconsistent State laws; determination of inconsistency

This subchapter does not annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this subchapter from complying with, the laws of any State with respect to credit discrimination, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this subchapter, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. The Board is authorized to determine whether such inconsistencies exist. The Board may not determine that any State law is inconsistent with any provision of this subchapter if the Board determines that such law gives greater protection to the applicant.

#### (g) Exemption by regulation of credit transactions covered by State law; failure to comply with State law

The Board shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of sections 1691 and 1691a of this title any class of credit transactions within any State if it determines that under the law of that State that class of transactions is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed under this subchapter or that such law gives greater protection to the applicant, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement. Failure to comply with any requirement of such State law in any transaction so exempted shall constitute a violation of this subchapter for the purposes of section 1691e of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §705, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1523; amended Pub. L. 94-239, §5, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 253.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1976—Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-239, §5(1), substituted provisions requiring an election of remedies in legal actions involving the recovery of monetary damages, for provisions specifying a general election of remedies.

Subsecs. (f), (g). Pub. L. 94-239, §5(2), added subsecs. (f) and (g).

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-239 effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1691 of this title.

**§ 1691e. Civil liability****(a) Individual or class action for actual damages**

Any creditor who fails to comply with any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be liable to the aggrieved applicant for any actual damages sustained by such applicant acting either in an individual capacity or as a member of a class.

**(b) Recovery of punitive damages in individual and class action for actual damages; exemptions; maximum amount of punitive damages in individual actions; limitation on total recovery in class actions; factors determining amount of award**

Any creditor, other than a government or governmental subdivision or agency, who fails to comply with any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be liable to the aggrieved applicant for punitive damages in an amount not greater than \$10,000, in addition to any actual damages provided in subsection (a) of this section, except that in the case of a class action the total recovery under this subsection shall not exceed the lesser of \$500,000 or 1 per centum of the net worth of the creditor. In determining the amount of such damages in any action, the court shall consider, among other relevant factors, the amount of any actual damages awarded, the frequency and persistence of failures of compliance by the creditor, the resources of the creditor, the number of persons adversely affected, and the extent to which the creditor's failure of compliance was intentional.

**(c) Action for equitable and declaratory relief**

Upon application by an aggrieved applicant, the appropriate United States district court or any other court of competent jurisdiction may grant such equitable and declaratory relief as is necessary to enforce the requirements imposed under this subchapter.

**(d) Recovery of costs and attorney fees**

In the case of any successful action under subsection (a), (b), or (c) of this section, the costs of the action, together with a reasonable attorney's fee as determined by the court, shall be added to any damages awarded by the court under such subsection.

**(e) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or interpretation or approval by an official or employee of Federal Reserve System duly authorized by Board**

No provision of this subchapter imposing liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with any official rule, regulation, or interpretation thereof by the Board or in conformity with any interpretation or approval by an official or employee of the Federal Reserve System duly authorized by the Board to issue such interpretations or approvals under such procedures as the Board may prescribe therefor, notwithstanding that after such act or omission has occurred, such rule, regula-

tion, interpretation, or approval is amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

**(f) Jurisdiction of courts; time for maintenance of action; exceptions**

Any action under this section may be brought in the appropriate United States district court without regard to the amount in controversy, or in any other court of competent jurisdiction. No such action shall be brought later than two years from the date of the occurrence of the violation, except that—

(1) whenever any agency having responsibility for administrative enforcement under section 1691c of this title commences an enforcement proceeding within two years from the date of the occurrence of the violation,

(2) whenever the Attorney General commences a civil action under this section within two years from the date of the occurrence of the violation,

then any applicant who has been a victim of the discrimination which is the subject of such proceeding or civil action may bring an action under this section not later than one year after the commencement of that proceeding or action.

**(g) Request by responsible enforcement agency to Attorney General for civil action**

The agencies having responsibility for administrative enforcement under section 1691c of this title, if unable to obtain compliance with section 1691 of this title, are authorized to refer the matter to the Attorney General with a recommendation that an appropriate civil action be instituted. Each agency referred to in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 1691c(a) of this title shall refer the matter to the Attorney General whenever the agency has reason to believe that 1 or more creditors has engaged in a pattern or practice of discouraging or denying applications for credit in violation of section 1691(a) of this title. Each such agency may refer the matter to the Attorney General whenever the agency has reason to believe that 1 or more creditors has violated section 1691(a) of this title.

**(h) Authority for Attorney General to bring civil action; jurisdiction**

When a matter is referred to the Attorney General pursuant to subsection (g) of this section, or whenever he has reason to believe that one or more creditors are engaged in a pattern or practice in violation of this subchapter, the Attorney General may bring a civil action in any appropriate United States district court for such relief as may be appropriate, including actual and punitive damages and injunctive relief.

**(i) Recovery under both subchapter and fair housing enforcement provisions prohibited for violation based on same transaction**

No person aggrieved by a violation of this subchapter and by a violation of section 3605 of title 42 shall recover under this subchapter and section 3612<sup>1</sup> of title 42, if such violation is based on the same transaction.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

**(j) Discovery of creditor's granting standards**

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to prohibit the discovery of a creditor's credit granting standards under appropriate discovery procedures in the court or agency in which an action or proceeding is brought.

**(k) Notice to HUD of violations**

Whenever an agency referred to in paragraph (1), (2), or (3) of section 1691c(a) of this title—

(1) has reason to believe, as a result of receiving a consumer complaint, conducting a consumer compliance examination, or otherwise, that a violation of this subchapter has occurred;

(2) has reason to believe that the alleged violation would be a violation of the Fair Housing Act [42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.]; and

(3) does not refer the matter to the Attorney General pursuant to subsection (g) of this section,

the agency shall notify the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development of the violation, and shall notify the applicant that the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development has been notified of the alleged violation and that remedies for the violation may be available under the Fair Housing Act.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §706, as added Pub. L. 93-495, title V, §503, Oct. 28, 1974, 88 Stat. 1524; amended Pub. L. 94-239, §6, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 253; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, §223(a)-(c), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2306.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 3612 of title 42, referred to in subsec. (i), which related to enforcement of the Fair Housing Act (42 U.S.C. 3601 et seq.) by private persons, was repealed by Pub. L. 100-430, §8(2), Sept. 13, 1988, 102 Stat. 1625. See section 3613 of Title 42, The Public Health and Welfare.

The Fair Housing Act, referred to in subsec. (k), is title VIII of Pub. L. 90-284, Apr. 11, 1968, 82 Stat. 81, as amended, which is classified principally to subchapter I (§3601 et seq.) of chapter 45 of Title 42. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see Short Title note set out under section 3601 of Title 42 and Tables.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (g). Pub. L. 102-242, §223(a), inserted at end “Each agency referred to in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 1691c(a) of this title shall refer the matter to the Attorney General whenever the agency has reason to believe that 1 or more creditors has engaged in a pattern or practice of discouraging or denying applications for credit in violation of section 1691(a) of this title. Each such agency may refer the matter to the Attorney General whenever the agency has reason to believe that 1 or more creditors has violated section 1691(a) of this title.”

Subsec. (h). Pub. L. 102-242, §223(b), inserted “actual and punitive damages and” after “be appropriate, including”.

Subsec. (k). Pub. L. 102-242, §223(c), added subsec. (k). 1976—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 94-239 substituted reference to member for reference to representative.

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 94-239 inserted provisions exempting government or governmental subdivision or agency from requirements of this subchapter, incorporated provisions contained in former subsec. (c) relating to recovery in class actions and, as incorporated, raised the total amount of recovery under a class action from \$100,000 to \$500,000.

Subsec. (c). Pub. L. 94-239 redesignated subsec. (d) as (c) and specified United States district court or other

court of competent jurisdiction as court in which to bring action, and substituted provisions authorizing such court to grant equitable and declaratory relief, for provisions authorizing civil actions for preventive relief. Provisions of former subsec. (c) were incorporated into present subsec. (b) and amended.

Subsec. (d). Pub. L. 94-239 redesignated subsec. (e) as (d) and made minor changes in phraseology. Former subsec. (d) redesignated (c) and amended.

Subsec. (e). Pub. L. 94-239 redesignated subsec. (f) as (e) and inserted reference to officially promulgated rule, regulation, or interpretation and provisions relating to approval and interpretations by an official or employee of the Federal Reserve System duly authorized by the Board. Former subsec. (e) redesignated (d) and amended.

Subsec. (f). Pub. L. 94-239 redesignated subsec. (g) as (f) and inserted provisions which substituted a two year limitation for one year limitation and provisions extending time in which to bring action under enumerated conditions. Former subsec. (f) redesignated (e) and amended.

Subsecs. (g) to (j). Pub. L. 94-239 added subsecs. (g) to (j). Former subsec. (g) redesignated (f) and amended.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1976 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 94-239 effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1691 of this title.

**§ 1691f. Annual reports to Congress; contents**

Each year, the Board and the Attorney General shall, respectively, make reports to the Congress concerning the administration of their functions under this subchapter, including such recommendations as the Board and the Attorney General, respectively, deem necessary or appropriate. In addition, each report of the Board shall include its assessment of the extent to which compliance with the requirements of this subchapter is being achieved, and a summary of the enforcement actions taken by each of the agencies assigned administrative enforcement responsibilities under section 1691c of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VII, §707, as added Pub. L. 94-239, §7, Mar. 23, 1976, 90 Stat. 255; amended Pub. L. 96-221, title VI, §610(c), Mar. 31, 1980, 94 Stat. 174.)

## AMENDMENTS

1980—Pub. L. 96-221 substituted “Each year” for “Not later than February 1 of each year after 1976”.

## EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1980 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 96-221 effective on expiration of two years and six months after Mar. 31, 1980, with all regulations, forms, and clauses required to be prescribed to be promulgated at least one year prior to such effective date, and allowing any creditor to comply with any amendments, in accordance with the regulations, forms, and clauses prescribed by the Board prior to such effective date, see section 625 of Pub. L. 96-221, set out as a note under section 1602 of this title.

## EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective Mar. 23, 1976, see section 708 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as a note under section 1691 of this title.

**SUBCHAPTER V—DEBT COLLECTION PRACTICES**

## SUBCHAPTER REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This subchapter is referred to in title 31 section 3718.

**§ 1692. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose**

**(a) Abusive practices**

There is abundant evidence of the use of abusive, deceptive, and unfair debt collection practices by many debt collectors. Abusive debt collection practices contribute to the number of personal bankruptcies, to marital instability, to the loss of jobs, and to invasions of individual privacy.

**(b) Inadequacy of laws**

Existing laws and procedures for redressing these injuries are inadequate to protect consumers.

**(c) Available non-abusive collection methods**

Means other than misrepresentation or other abusive debt collection practices are available for the effective collection of debts.

**(d) Interstate commerce**

Abusive debt collection practices are carried on to a substantial extent in interstate commerce and through means and instrumentalities of such commerce. Even where abusive debt collection practices are purely intrastate in character, they nevertheless directly affect interstate commerce.

**(e) Purposes**

It is the purpose of this subchapter to eliminate abusive debt collection practices by debt collectors, to insure that those debt collectors who refrain from using abusive debt collection practices are not competitively disadvantaged, and to promote consistent State action to protect consumers against debt collection abuses.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §802, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 874.)

**EFFECTIVE DATE**

Section 818 of title VIII of Pub. L. 90-321, as added Pub. L. 95-109, provided that: "This title [enacting this subchapter] takes effect upon the expiration of six months after the date of its enactment [Sept. 20, 1977], but section 809 [section 1692g of this title] shall apply only with respect to debts for which the initial attempt to collect occurs after such effective date."

**SHORT TITLE**

This subchapter known as the "Fair Debt Collection Practices Act", see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of this title.

**§ 1692a. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter—

(1) The term "Commission" means the Federal Trade Commission.

(2) The term "communication" means the conveying of information regarding a debt directly or indirectly to any person through any medium.

(3) The term "consumer" means any natural person obligated or allegedly obligated to pay any debt.

(4) The term "creditor" means any person who offers or extends credit creating a debt or to whom a debt is owed, but such term does not include any person to the extent that he receives an assignment or transfer of a debt in default solely for the purpose of facilitating collection of such debt for another.

(5) The term "debt" means any obligation or alleged obligation of a consumer to pay money arising out of a transaction in which the money, property, insurance, or services which are the subject of the transaction are primarily for personal, family, or household purposes, whether or not such obligation has been reduced to judgment.

(6) The term "debt collector" means any person who uses any instrumentality of interstate commerce or the mails in any business the principal purpose of which is the collection of any debts, or who regularly collects or attempts to collect, directly or indirectly, debts owed or due or asserted to be owed or due another. Notwithstanding the exclusion provided by clause (F) of the last sentence of this paragraph, the term includes any creditor who, in the process of collecting his own debts, uses any name other than his own which would indicate that a third person is collecting or attempting to collect such debts. For the purpose of section 1692f(6) of this title, such term also includes any person who uses any instrumentality of interstate commerce or the mails in any business the principal purpose of which is the enforcement of security interests. The term does not include—

(A) any officer or employee of a creditor while, in the name of the creditor, collecting debts for such creditor;

(B) any person while acting as a debt collector for another person, both of whom are related by common ownership or affiliated by corporate control, if the person acting as a debt collector does so only for persons to whom it is so related or affiliated and if the principal business of such person is not the collection of debts;

(C) any officer or employee of the United States or any State to the extent that collecting or attempting to collect any debt is in the performance of his official duties;

(D) any person while serving or attempting to serve legal process on any other person in connection with the judicial enforcement of any debt;

(E) any nonprofit organization which, at the request of consumers, performs bona fide consumer credit counseling and assists consumers in the liquidation of their debts by receiving payments from such consumers and distributing such amounts to creditors; and

(F) any person collecting or attempting to collect any debt owed or due or asserted to be owed or due another to the extent such activity (i) is incidental to a bona fide fiduciary obligation or a bona fide escrow arrangement; (ii) concerns a debt which was originated by such person; (iii) concerns a debt which was not in default at the time it was obtained by such person; or (iv) concerns a debt obtained by such person as a secured party in a commercial credit transaction involving the creditor.

(7) The term "location information" means a consumer's place of abode and his telephone number at such place, or his place of employment.

(8) The term "State" means any State, territory, or possession of the United States, the

District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any political subdivision of any of the foregoing.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §803, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 875; amended Pub. L. 99-361, July 9, 1986, 100 Stat. 768.)

#### AMENDMENTS

1986—Par. (6). Pub. L. 99-361 in provision preceding cl. (A) substituted “clause (F)” for “clause (G)”, struck out cl. (F) which excluded any attorney-at-law collecting a debt as an attorney on behalf of and in the name of a client from term “debt collector”, and redesignated cl. (G) as (F).

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 31 section 3718.

### § 1692b. Acquisition of location information

Any debt collector communicating with any person other than the consumer for the purpose of acquiring location information about the consumer shall—

(1) identify himself, state that he is confirming or correcting location information concerning the consumer, and, only if expressly requested, identify his employer;

(2) not state that such consumer owes any debt;

(3) not communicate with any such person more than once unless requested to do so by such person or unless the debt collector reasonably believes that the earlier response of such person is erroneous or incomplete and that such person now has correct or complete location information;

(4) not communicate by post card;

(5) not use any language or symbol on any envelope or in the contents of any communication effected by the mails or telegram that indicates that the debt collector is in the debt collection business or that the communication relates to the collection of a debt; and

(6) after the debt collector knows the consumer is represented by an attorney with regard to the subject debt and has knowledge of, or can readily ascertain, such attorney's name and address, not communicate with any person other than that attorney, unless the attorney fails to respond within a reasonable period of time to communication from the debt collector.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §804, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 876.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1692c, 1692d, 1692e of this title.

### § 1692c. Communication in connection with debt collection

#### (a) Communication with the consumer generally

Without the prior consent of the consumer given directly to the debt collector or the express permission of a court of competent jurisdiction, a debt collector may not communicate with a consumer in connection with the collection of any debt—

(1) at any unusual time or place or a time or place known or which should be known to be

inconvenient to the consumer. In the absence of knowledge of circumstances to the contrary, a debt collector shall assume that the convenient time for communicating with a consumer is after 8 o'clock antemeridian and before 9 o'clock postmeridian, local time at the consumer's location;

(2) if the debt collector knows the consumer is represented by an attorney with respect to such debt and has knowledge of, or can readily ascertain, such attorney's name and address, unless the attorney fails to respond within a reasonable period of time to a communication from the debt collector or unless the attorney consents to direct communication with the consumer; or

(3) at the consumer's place of employment if the debt collector knows or has reason to know that the consumer's employer prohibits the consumer from receiving such communication.

#### (b) Communication with third parties

Except as provided in section 1692b of this title, without the prior consent of the consumer given directly to the debt collector, or the express permission of a court of competent jurisdiction, or as reasonably necessary to effectuate a postjudgment judicial remedy, a debt collector may not communicate, in connection with the collection of any debt, with any person other than the consumer, his attorney, a consumer reporting agency if otherwise permitted by law, the creditor, the attorney of the creditor, or the attorney of the debt collector.

#### (c) Ceasing communication

If a consumer notifies a debt collector in writing that the consumer refuses to pay a debt or that the consumer wishes the debt collector to cease further communication with the consumer, the debt collector shall not communicate further with the consumer with respect to such debt, except—

(1) to advise the consumer that the debt collector's further efforts are being terminated;

(2) to notify the consumer that the debt collector or creditor may invoke specified remedies which are ordinarily invoked by such debt collector or creditor; or

(3) where applicable, to notify the consumer that the debt collector or creditor intends to invoke a specified remedy.

If such notice from the consumer is made by mail, notification shall be complete upon receipt.

#### (d) “Consumer” defined

For the purpose of this section, the term “consumer” includes the consumer's spouse, parent (if the consumer is a minor), guardian, executor, or administrator.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §805, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 876.)

### § 1692d. Harassment or abuse

A debt collector may not engage in any conduct the natural consequence of which is to harass, oppress, or abuse any person in connection with the collection of a debt. Without limiting the general application of the foregoing, the following conduct is a violation of this section:

(1) The use or threat of use of violence or other criminal means to harm the physical person, reputation, or property of any person.

(2) The use of obscene or profane language or language the natural consequence of which is to abuse the hearer or reader.

(3) The publication of a list of consumers who allegedly refuse to pay debts, except to a consumer reporting agency or to persons meeting the requirements of section 1681a(f) or 1681b(3) of this title.

(4) The advertisement for sale of any debt to coerce payment of the debt.

(5) Causing a telephone to ring or engaging any person in telephone conversation repeatedly or continuously with intent to annoy, abuse, or harass any person at the called number.

(6) Except as provided in section 1692b of this title, the placement of telephone calls without meaningful disclosure of the caller's identity.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §806, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 877.)

#### § 1692e. False or misleading representations

A debt collector may not use any false, deceptive, or misleading representation or means in connection with the collection of any debt. Without limiting the general application of the foregoing, the following conduct is a violation of this section:

(1) The false representation or implication that the debt collector is vouched for, bonded by, or affiliated with the United States or any State, including the use of any badge, uniform, or facsimile thereof.

(2) The false representation of—

(A) the character, amount, or legal status of any debt; or

(B) any services rendered or compensation which may be lawfully received by any debt collector for the collection of a debt.

(3) The false representation or implication that any individual is an attorney or that any communication is from an attorney.

(4) The representation or implication that nonpayment of any debt will result in the arrest or imprisonment of any person or the seizure, garnishment, attachment, or sale of any property or wages of any person unless such action is lawful and the debt collector or creditor intends to take such action.

(5) The threat to take any action that cannot legally be taken or that is not intended to be taken.

(6) The false representation or implication that a sale, referral, or other transfer of any interest in a debt shall cause the consumer to—

(A) lose any claim or defense to payment of the debt; or

(B) become subject to any practice prohibited by this subchapter.

(7) The false representation or implication that the consumer committed any crime or other conduct in order to disgrace the consumer.

(8) Communicating or threatening to communicate to any person credit information

which is known or which should be known to be false, including the failure to communicate that a disputed debt is disputed.

(9) The use or distribution of any written communication which simulates or is falsely represented to be a document authorized, issued, or approved by any court, official, or agency of the United States or any State, or which creates a false impression as to its source, authorization, or approval.

(10) The use of any false representation or deceptive means to collect or attempt to collect any debt or to obtain information concerning a consumer.

(11) Except as otherwise provided for communications to acquire location information under section 1692b of this title, the failure to disclose clearly in all communications made to collect a debt or to obtain information about a consumer, that the debt collector is attempting to collect a debt and that any information obtained will be used for that purpose.

(12) The false representation or implication that accounts have been turned over to innocent purchasers for value.

(13) The false representation or implication that documents are legal process.

(14) The use of any business, company, or organization name other than the true name of the debt collector's business, company, or organization.

(15) The false representation or implication that documents are not legal process forms or do not require action by the consumer.

(16) The false representation or implication that a debt collector operates or is employed by a consumer reporting agency as defined by section 1681a(f) of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §807, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 877.)

#### § 1692f. Unfair practices

A debt collector may not use unfair or unconscionable means to collect or attempt to collect any debt. Without limiting the general application of the foregoing, the following conduct is a violation of this section:

(1) The collection of any amount (including any interest, fee, charge, or expense incidental to the principal obligation) unless such amount is expressly authorized by the agreement creating the debt or permitted by law.

(2) The acceptance by a debt collector from any person of a check or other payment instrument postdated by more than five days unless such person is notified in writing of the debt collector's intent to deposit such check or instrument not more than ten nor less than three business days prior to such deposit.

(3) The solicitation by a debt collector of any postdated check or other postdated payment instrument for the purpose of threatening or instituting criminal prosecution.

(4) Depositing or threatening to deposit any postdated check or other postdated payment instrument prior to the date on such check or instrument.

(5) Causing charges to be made to any person for communications by concealment of the

true purpose of the communication. Such charges include, but are not limited to, collect telephone calls and telegram fees.

(6) Taking or threatening to take any non-judicial action to effect dispossession or disablement of property if—

(A) there is no present right to possession of the property claimed as collateral through an enforceable security interest;

(B) there is no present intention to take possession of the property; or

(C) the property is exempt by law from such dispossession or disablement.

(7) Communicating with a consumer regarding a debt by post card.

(8) Using any language or symbol, other than the debt collector's address, on any envelope when communicating with a consumer by use of the mails or by telegram, except that a debt collector may use his business name if such name does not indicate that he is in the debt collection business.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §808, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 879.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1692a of this title.

**§ 1692g. Validation of debts**

**(a) Notice of debt; contents**

Within five days after the initial communication with a consumer in connection with the collection of any debt, a debt collector shall, unless the following information is contained in the initial communication or the consumer has paid the debt, send the consumer a written notice containing—

(1) the amount of the debt;

(2) the name of the creditor to whom the debt is owed;

(3) a statement that unless the consumer, within thirty days after receipt of the notice, disputes the validity of the debt, or any portion thereof, the debt will be assumed to be valid by the debt collector;

(4) a statement that if the consumer notifies the debt collector in writing within the thirty-day period that the debt, or any portion thereof, is disputed, the debt collector will obtain verification of the debt or a copy of a judgment against the consumer and a copy of such verification or judgment will be mailed to the consumer by the debt collector; and

(5) a statement that, upon the consumer's written request within the thirty-day period, the debt collector will provide the consumer with the name and address of the original creditor, if different from the current creditor.

**(b) Disputed debts**

If the consumer notifies the debt collector in writing within the thirty-day period described in subsection (a) of this section that the debt, or any portion thereof, is disputed, or that the consumer requests the name and address of the original creditor, the debt collector shall cease collection of the debt, or any disputed portion thereof, until the debt collector obtains verification of the debt or a copy of a judgment, or the

name and address of the original creditor, and a copy of such verification or judgment, or name and address of the original creditor, is mailed to the consumer by the debt collector.

**(c) Admission of liability**

The failure of a consumer to dispute the validity of a debt under this section may not be construed by any court as an admission of liability by the consumer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §809, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 879.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section applicable only with respect to debts for which the initial attempt to collect occurs after the effective date of this subchapter, which takes effect upon the expiration of six months after Sept. 20, 1977, see section 818 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as a note under section 1692 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in title 42 section 292f.

**§ 1692h. Multiple debts**

If any consumer owes multiple debts and makes any single payment to any debt collector with respect to such debts, such debt collector may not apply such payment to any debt which is disputed by the consumer and, where applicable, shall apply such payment in accordance with the consumer's directions.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §810, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 880.)

**§ 1692i. Legal actions by debt collectors**

**(a) Venue**

Any debt collector who brings any legal action on a debt against any consumer shall—

(1) in the case of an action to enforce an interest in real property securing the consumer's obligation, bring such action only in a judicial district or similar legal entity in which such real property is located; or

(2) in the case of an action not described in paragraph (1), bring such action only in the judicial district or similar legal entity—

(A) in which such consumer signed the contract sued upon; or

(B) in which such consumer resides at the commencement of the action.

**(b) Authorization of actions**

Nothing in this subchapter shall be construed to authorize the bringing of legal actions by debt collectors.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §811, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 880.)

**§ 1692j. Furnishing certain deceptive forms**

(a) It is unlawful to design, compile, and furnish any form knowing that such form would be used to create the false belief in a consumer that a person other than the creditor of such consumer is participating in the collection of or in an attempt to collect a debt such consumer allegedly owes such creditor, when in fact such person is not so participating.

(b) Any person who violates this section shall be liable to the same extent and in the same

manner as a debt collector is liable under section 1692k of this title for failure to comply with a provision of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §812, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 880.)

### § 1692k. Civil liability

#### (a) Amount of damages

Except as otherwise provided by this section, any debt collector who fails to comply with any provision of this subchapter with respect to any person is liable to such person in an amount equal to the sum of—

(1) any actual damage sustained by such person as a result of such failure;

(2)(A) in the case of any action by an individual, such additional damages as the court may allow, but not exceeding \$1,000; or

(B) in the case of a class action, (i) such amount for each named plaintiff as could be recovered under subparagraph (A), and (ii) such amount as the court may allow for all other class members, without regard to a minimum individual recovery, not to exceed the lesser of \$500,000 or 1 per centum of the net worth of the debt collector; and

(3) in the case of any successful action to enforce the foregoing liability, the costs of the action, together with a reasonable attorney's fee as determined by the court. On a finding by the court that an action under this section was brought in bad faith and for the purpose of harassment, the court may award to the defendant attorney's fees reasonable in relation to the work expended and costs.

#### (b) Factors considered by court

In determining the amount of liability in any action under subsection (a) of this section, the court shall consider, among other relevant factors—

(1) in any individual action under subsection (a)(2)(A) of this section, the frequency and persistence of noncompliance by the debt collector, the nature of such noncompliance, and the extent to which such noncompliance was intentional; or

(2) in any class action under subsection (a)(2)(B) of this section, the frequency and persistence of noncompliance by the debt collector, the nature of such noncompliance, the resources of the debt collector, the number of persons adversely affected, and the extent to which the debt collector's noncompliance was intentional.

#### (c) Intent

A debt collector may not be held liable in any action brought under this subchapter if the debt collector shows by a preponderance of evidence that the violation was not intentional and resulted from a bona fide error notwithstanding the maintenance of procedures reasonably adapted to avoid any such error.

#### (d) Jurisdiction

An action to enforce any liability created by this subchapter may be brought in any appropriate United States district court without regard to the amount in controversy, or in any other court of competent jurisdiction, within

one year from the date on which the violation occurs.

#### (e) Advisory opinions of Commission

No provision of this section imposing any liability shall apply to any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with any advisory opinion of the Commission, notwithstanding that after such act or omission has occurred, such opinion is amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §813, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 881.)

#### SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1692j of this title.

### § 1692l. Administrative enforcement

#### (a) Federal Trade Commission

Compliance with this subchapter shall be enforced by the Commission, except to the extent that enforcement of the requirements imposed under this subchapter is specifically committed to another agency under subsection (b) of this section. For purpose of the exercise by the Commission of its functions and powers under the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.], a violation of this subchapter shall be deemed an unfair or deceptive act or practice in violation of that Act. All of the functions and powers of the Commission under the Federal Trade Commission Act are available to the Commission to enforce compliance by any person with this subchapter, irrespective of whether that person is engaged in commerce or meets any other jurisdictional tests in the Federal Trade Commission Act, including the power to enforce the provisions of this subchapter in the same manner as if the violation had been a violation of a Federal Trade Commission trade regulation rule.

#### (b) Applicable provisions of law

Compliance with any requirements imposed under this subchapter shall be enforced under—

(1) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], in the case of—

(A) national banks, and Federal branches and Federal agencies of foreign banks, by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), branches and agencies of foreign banks (other than Federal branches, Federal agencies, and insured State branches of foreign banks), commercial lending companies owned or controlled by foreign banks, and organizations operating under section 25 or 25(a)<sup>1</sup> of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.], by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System; and

(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System) and insured State branches of foreign banks, by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

(2) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], by the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(3) the Federal Credit Union Act [12 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.], by the National Credit Union Administration Board with respect to any Federal credit union;

(4) subtitle IV of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board;

(5) part A of subtitle VII of title 49, by the Secretary of Transportation with respect to any air carrier or any foreign air carrier subject to that part; and

(6) the Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921 [7 U.S.C. 181 et seq.] (except as provided in section 406 of that Act [7 U.S.C. 226, 227]), by the Secretary of Agriculture with respect to any activities subject to that Act.

The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).

#### (c) Agency powers

For the purpose of the exercise by any agency referred to in subsection (b) of this section of its powers under any Act referred to in that subsection, a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. In addition to its powers under any provision of law specifically referred to in subsection (b) of this section, each of the agencies referred to in that subsection may exercise, for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter any other authority conferred on it by law, except as provided in subsection (d) of this section.

#### (d) Rules and regulations

Neither the Commission nor any other agency referred to in subsection (b) of this section may promulgate trade regulation rules or other regulations with respect to the collection of debts by debt collectors as defined in this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §814, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 881; amended Pub. L. 95-630, title V, §501, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3680; Pub. L. 98-443, §9(n), Oct. 4, 1984, 98 Stat. 1708; Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, §744(n), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, §212(e), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2301; Pub. L. 102-550, title XVI, §1604(a)(8), Oct. 28, 1992, 106 Stat. 4082; Pub. L. 104-88, title III, §316, Dec. 29, 1995, 109 Stat. 949.)

#### REFERENCES IN TEXT

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (a), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of this title and Tables.

Section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(1)(B), which is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Bank-

ing, was renumbered section 25A of that act by Pub. L. 102-242, title I, §142(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2281. Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Federal Credit Union Act, referred to in subsec. (b)(3), is act June 26, 1934, ch. 750, 48 Stat. 1216, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 14 (§1751 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1751 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Packers and Stockyards Act, 1921, referred to in subsec. (b)(6), is act Aug. 15, 1921, ch. 64, 42 Stat. 159, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 9 (§181 et seq.) of Title 7, Agriculture. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 181 of Title 7 and Tables.

#### CODIFICATION

In subsec. (b)(4), “subtitle IV of title 49” substituted for “the Acts to regulate commerce” on authority of Pub. L. 95-473, §3(b), Oct. 17, 1978, 92 Stat. 1466, the first section of which enacted subtitle IV of Title 49, Transportation.

In subsec. (b)(5), “part A of subtitle VII of title 49” substituted for “the Federal Aviation Act of 1958 [49 App. U.S.C. 1301 et seq.]” and “that part” substituted for “that Act” on authority of Pub. L. 103-272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49.

#### AMENDMENTS

1995—Subsec. (b)(4). Pub. L. 104-88 substituted “Secretary of Transportation, with respect to all carriers subject to the jurisdiction of the Surface Transportation Board” for “Interstate Commerce Commission with respect to any common carrier subject to those Acts”.

1992—Subsec. (b)(1)(C). Pub. L. 102-550 substituted semicolon for period at end.

1991—Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 102-242, §212(e)(2), inserted at end “The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).”

Pub. L. 102-242, §212(e)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: “section 8 of Federal Deposit Insurance Act, in the case of—

“(A) national banks, by the Comptroller of the Currency;

“(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), by the Federal Reserve Board; and

“(C) banks the deposits or accounts of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System), by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;”.

1989—Subsec. (b)(2). Pub. L. 101-73 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “section 5(d) of the Home Owners Loan Act of 1933, section 407 of the National Housing Act, and sections 6(i) and 17 of the Federal Home Loan Bank Act, by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board (acting directly or through the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation), in the case of any institution subject to any of those provisions;”.

1984—Subsec. (b)(5). Pub. L. 98-443 substituted “Secretary of Transportation” for “Civil Aeronautics Board”.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1995 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 104-88 effective Jan. 1, 1996, see section 2 of Pub. L. 104-88, set out as an Effective Date note under section 701 of Title 49, Transportation.

#### EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1992 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 102-550 effective as if included in the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation Improve-

ment Act of 1991, Pub. L. 102-242, as of Dec. 19, 1991, see section 1609(a) of Pub. L. 102-550, set out as a note under section 191 of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

EFFECTIVE DATE OF 1984 AMENDMENT

Amendment by Pub. L. 98-443 effective Jan. 1, 1985, see section 9(v) of Pub. L. 98-443, set out as a note under section 5314 of Title 5, Government Organization and Employees.

TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

“National Credit Union Administration Board” substituted for “Administrator of the National Credit Union Administration” in subsec. (b)(3) pursuant to section 501 of Pub. L. 95-630 [12 U.S.C. 1752a] which vested authority for management of National Credit Union Administration in National Credit Union Administration Board.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1692m of this title.

**§ 1692m. Reports to Congress by the Commission; views of other Federal agencies**

(a) Not later than one year after the effective date of this subchapter and at one-year intervals thereafter, the Commission shall make reports to the Congress concerning the administration of its functions under this subchapter, including such recommendations as the Commission deems necessary or appropriate. In addition, each report of the Commission shall include its assessment of the extent to which compliance with this subchapter is being achieved and a summary of the enforcement actions taken by the Commission under section 1692l of this title.

(b) In the exercise of its functions under this subchapter, the Commission may obtain upon request the views of any other Federal agency which exercises enforcement functions under section 1692l of this title.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §815, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 882.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

The effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), is the date occurring on expiration of six months after Sept. 20, 1977. See section 818 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1692 of this title.

**§ 1692n. Relation to State laws**

This subchapter does not annul, alter, or affect, or exempt any person subject to the provisions of this subchapter from complying with the laws of any State with respect to debt collection practices, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with any provision of this subchapter, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. For purposes of this section, a State law is not inconsistent with this subchapter if the protection such law affords any consumer is greater than the protection provided by this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §816, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 883.)

**§ 1692o. Exemption for State regulation**

The Commission shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of this subchapter any

class of debt collection practices within any State if the Commission determines that under the law of that State that class of debt collection practices is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed by this subchapter, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title VIII, §817, as added Pub. L. 95-109, Sept. 20, 1977, 91 Stat. 883.)

SUBCHAPTER VI—ELECTRONIC FUND TRANSFERS

**§ 1693. Congressional findings and declaration of purpose**

**(a) Rights and liabilities undefined**

The Congress finds that the use of electronic systems to transfer funds provides the potential for substantial benefits to consumers. However, due to the unique characteristics of such systems, the application of existing consumer protection legislation is unclear, leaving the rights and liabilities of consumers, financial institutions, and intermediaries in electronic fund transfers undefined.

**(b) Purposes**

It is the purpose of this subchapter to provide a basic framework establishing the rights, liabilities, and responsibilities of participants in electronic fund transfer systems. The primary objective of this subchapter, however, is the provision of individual consumer rights.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §902, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3728.)

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section 921 of title IX of Pub. L. 90-321, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3741, provided that: “This title [enacting this subchapter] takes effect upon the expiration of eighteen months from the date of its enactment [Nov. 10, 1978] except that sections 909 and 911 [sections 1693g, 1693i of this title] take effect upon the expiration of ninety days after the date of enactment.”

SHORT TITLE

This subchapter known as the “Electronic Fund Transfer Act”, see Short Title note set out under section 1601 of this title.

**§ 1693a. Definitions**

As used in this subchapter—

(1) the term “accepted card or other means of access” means a card, code, or other means of access to a consumer’s account for the purpose of initiating electronic fund transfers when the person to whom such card or other means of access was issued has requested and received or has signed or has used, or authorized another to use, such card or other means of access for the purpose of transferring money between accounts or obtaining money, property, labor, or services;

(2) the term “account” means a demand deposit, savings deposit, or other asset account (other than an occasional or incidental credit balance in an open end credit plan as defined in section 1602(i) of this title), as described in regulations of the Board, established pri-

marily for personal, family, or household purposes, but such term does not include an account held by a financial institution pursuant to a bona fide trust agreement;

(3) the term “Board” means the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System;

(4) the term “business day” means any day on which the offices of the consumer’s financial institution involved in an electronic fund transfer are open to the public for carrying on substantially all of its business functions;

(5) the term “consumer” means a natural person;

(6) the term “electronic fund transfer” means any transfer of funds, other than a transaction originated by check, draft, or similar paper instrument, which is initiated through an electronic terminal, telephonic instrument, or computer or magnetic tape so as to order, instruct, or authorize a financial institution to debit or credit an account. Such term includes, but is not limited to, point-of-sale transfers, automated teller machine transactions, direct deposits or withdrawals of funds, and transfers initiated by telephone. Such term does not include—

(A) any check guarantee or authorization service which does not directly result in a debit or credit to a consumer’s account;

(B) any transfer of funds, other than those processed by automated clearinghouse, made by a financial institution on behalf of a consumer by means of a service that transfers funds held at either Federal Reserve banks or other depository institutions and which is not designed primarily to transfer funds on behalf of a consumer;

(C) any transaction the primary purpose of which is the purchase or sale of securities or commodities through a broker-dealer registered with or regulated by the Securities and Exchange Commission;

(D) any automatic transfer from a savings account to a demand deposit account pursuant to an agreement between a consumer and a financial institution for the purpose of covering an overdraft or maintaining an agreed upon minimum balance in the consumer’s demand deposit account; or

(E) any transfer of funds which is initiated by a telephone conversation between a consumer and an officer or employee of a financial institution which is not pursuant to a prearranged plan and under which periodic or recurring transfers are not contemplated;

as determined under regulations of the Board;

(7) the term “electronic terminal” means an electronic device, other than a telephone operated by a consumer, through which a consumer may initiate an electronic fund transfer. Such term includes, but is not limited to, point-of-sale terminals, automated teller machines, and cash dispensing machines;

(8) the term “financial institution” means a State or National bank, a State or Federal savings and loan association, a mutual savings bank, a State or Federal credit union, or any other person who, directly or indirectly, holds an account belonging to a consumer;

(9) the term “preauthorized electronic fund transfer” means an electronic fund transfer

authorized in advance to recur at substantially regular intervals;

(10) the term “State” means any State, territory, or possession of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, or any political subdivision of any of the foregoing; and

(11) the term “unauthorized electronic fund transfer” means an electronic fund transfer from a consumer’s account initiated by a person other than the consumer without actual authority to initiate such transfer and from which the consumer receives no benefit, but the term does not include any electronic fund transfer (A) initiated by a person other than the consumer who was furnished with the card, code, or other means of access to such consumer’s account by such consumer, unless the consumer has notified the financial institution involved that transfers by such other person are no longer authorized, (B) initiated with fraudulent intent by the consumer or any person acting in concert with the consumer, or (C) which constitutes an error committed by a financial institution.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §903, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3728.)

### § 1693b. Regulations

#### (a) Prescription by Board

The Board shall prescribe regulations to carry out the purposes of this subchapter. In prescribing such regulations, the Board shall:

(1) consult with the other agencies referred to in section 1693o of this title and take into account, and allow for, the continuing evolution of electronic banking services and the technology utilized in such services,

(2) prepare an analysis of economic impact which considers the costs and benefits to financial institutions, consumers, and other users of electronic fund transfers, including the extent to which additional documentation, reports, records, or other paper work would be required, and the effects upon competition in the provision of electronic banking services among large and small financial institutions and the availability of such services to different classes of consumers, particularly low income consumers,

(3) to the extent practicable, the Board shall demonstrate that the consumer protections of the proposed regulations outweigh the compliance costs imposed upon consumers and financial institutions, and

(4) any proposed regulations and accompanying analyses shall be sent promptly to Congress by the Board.

#### (b) Issuance of model clauses

The Board shall issue model clauses for optional use by financial institutions to facilitate compliance with the disclosure requirements of section 1693c of this title and to aid consumers in understanding the rights and responsibilities of participants in electronic fund transfers by utilizing readily understandable language. Such model clauses shall be adopted after notice duly given in the Federal Register and opportunity

for public comment in accordance with section 553 of title 5. With respect to the disclosures required by section 1693c(a)(3) and (4) of this title, the Board shall take account of variations in the services and charges under different electronic fund transfer systems and, as appropriate, shall issue alternative model clauses for disclosure of these differing account terms.

**(c) Criteria; modification of requirements**

Regulations prescribed hereunder may contain such classifications, differentiations, or other provisions, and may provide for such adjustments and exceptions for any class of electronic fund transfers, as in the judgment of the Board are necessary or proper to effectuate the purposes of this subchapter, to prevent circumvention or evasion thereof, or to facilitate compliance therewith. The Board shall by regulation modify the requirements imposed by this subchapter on small financial institutions if the Board determines that such modifications are necessary to alleviate any undue compliance burden on small financial institutions and such modifications are consistent with the purpose and objective of this subchapter.

**(d) Availability of disclosures, protections, responsibilities, and remedies created by this subchapter**

In the event that electronic fund transfer services are made available to consumers by a person other than a financial institution holding a consumer's account, the Board shall by regulation assure that the disclosures, protections, responsibilities, and remedies created by this subchapter are made applicable to such persons and services.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §904, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3730.)

**§ 1693c. Terms and conditions of transfers**

**(a) Disclosures; time; form; contents**

The terms and conditions of electronic fund transfers involving a consumer's account shall be disclosed at the time the consumer contracts for an electronic fund transfer service, in accordance with regulations of the Board. Such disclosures shall be in readily understandable language and shall include, to the extent applicable—

(1) the consumer's liability for unauthorized electronic fund transfers and, at the financial institution's option, notice of the advisability of prompt reporting of any loss, theft, or unauthorized use of a card, code, or other means of access;

(2) the telephone number and address of the person or office to be notified in the event the consumer believes that an unauthorized electronic fund transfer has been or may be effected;

(3) the type and nature of electronic fund transfers which the consumer may initiate, including any limitations on the frequency or dollar amount of such transfers, except that the details of such limitations need not be dis-

closed if their confidentiality is necessary to maintain the security of an electronic fund transfer system, as determined by the Board;

(4) any charges for electronic fund transfers or for the right to make such transfers;

(5) the consumer's right to stop payment of a preauthorized electronic fund transfer and the procedure to initiate such a stop payment order;

(6) the consumer's right to receive documentation of electronic fund transfers under section 1693d of this title;

(7) a summary, in a form prescribed by regulations of the Board, of the error resolution provisions of section 1693f of this title and the consumer's rights thereunder. The financial institution shall thereafter transmit such summary at least once per calendar year;

(8) the financial institution's liability to the consumer under section 1693h of this title; and

(9) under what circumstances the financial institution will in the ordinary course of business disclose information concerning the consumer's account to third persons.

**(b) Notification of changes to consumer**

A financial institution shall notify a consumer in writing at least twenty-one days prior to the effective date of any change in any term or condition of the consumer's account required to be disclosed under subsection (a) of this section if such change would result in greater cost or liability for such consumer or decreased access to the consumer's account. A financial institution may, however, implement a change in the terms or conditions of an account without prior notice when such change is immediately necessary to maintain or restore the security of an electronic fund transfer system or a consumer's account. Subject to subsection (a)(3) of this section, the Board shall require subsequent notification if such a change is made permanent.

**(c) Time for disclosures respecting accounts accessible prior to effective date of this subchapter**

For any account of a consumer made accessible to electronic fund transfers prior to the effective date of this subchapter, the information required to be disclosed to the consumer under subsection (a) of this section shall be disclosed not later than the earlier of—

(1) the first periodic statement required by section 1693d(c) of this title after the effective date of this subchapter; or

(2) thirty days after the effective date of this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §905, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3730.)

REFERENCES IN TEXT

For effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (c), see section 921 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1693 of this title.

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1693b, 1693d, 1693g, 1693i of this title.

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "that".

**§ 1693d. Documentation of transfers****(a) Availability of written documentation to consumer; contents**

For each electronic fund transfer initiated by a consumer from an electronic terminal, the financial institution holding such consumer's account shall, directly or indirectly, at the time the transfer is initiated, make available to the consumer written documentation of such transfer. The documentation shall clearly set forth to the extent applicable—

- (1) the amount involved and date the transfer is initiated;
- (2) the type of transfer;
- (3) the identity of the consumer's account with the financial institution from which or to which funds are transferred;
- (4) the identity of any third party to whom or from whom funds are transferred; and
- (5) the location or identification of the electronic terminal involved.

**(b) Notice of credit to consumer**

For a consumer's account which is scheduled to be credited by a preauthorized electronic fund transfer from the same payor at least once in each successive sixty-day period, except where the payor provides positive notice of the transfer to the consumer, the financial institution shall elect to provide promptly either positive notice to the consumer when the credit is made as scheduled, or negative notice to the consumer when the credit is not made as scheduled, in accordance with regulations of the Board. The means of notice elected shall be disclosed to the consumer in accordance with section 1693c of this title.

**(c) Periodic statement; contents**

A financial institution shall provide each consumer with a periodic statement for each account of such consumer that may be accessed by means of an electronic fund transfer. Except as provided in subsections (d) and (e) of this section, such statement shall be provided at least monthly for each monthly or shorter cycle in which an electronic fund transfer affecting the account has occurred, or every three months, whichever is more frequent. The statement, which may include information regarding transactions other than electronic fund transfers, shall clearly set forth—

- (1) with regard to each electronic fund transfer during the period, the information described in subsection (a) of this section, which may be provided on an accompanying document;
- (2) the amount of any fee or charge assessed by the financial institution during the period for electronic fund transfers or for account maintenance;
- (3) the balances in the consumer's account at the beginning of the period and at the close of the period; and
- (4) the address and telephone number to be used by the financial institution for the purpose of receiving any statement inquiry or notice of account error from the consumer. Such address and telephone number shall be preceded by the caption "Direct Inquiries To:" or other similar language indicating that the ad-

dress and number are to be used for such inquiries or notices.

**(d) Consumer passbook accounts**

In the case of a consumer's passbook account which may not be accessed by electronic fund transfers other than preauthorized electronic fund transfers crediting the account, a financial institution may, in lieu of complying with the requirements of subsection (c) of this section, upon presentation of the passbook provide the consumer in writing with the amount and date of each such transfer involving the account since the passbook was last presented.

**(e) Accounts other than passbook accounts**

In the case of a consumer's account, other than a passbook account, which may not be accessed by electronic fund transfers other than preauthorized electronic fund transfers crediting the account, the financial institution may provide a periodic statement on a quarterly basis which otherwise complies with the requirements of subsection (c) of this section.

**(f) Documentation as evidence**

In any action involving a consumer, any documentation required by this section to be given to the consumer which indicates that an electronic fund transfer was made to another person shall be admissible as evidence of such transfer and shall constitute prima facie proof that such transfer was made.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §906, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3731.)

**SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS**

This section is referred to in sections 1693c, 1693f, 1693g of this title.

**§ 1693e. Preauthorized transfers**

(a) A preauthorized electronic fund transfer from a consumer's account may be authorized by the consumer only in writing, and a copy of such authorization shall be provided to the consumer when made. A consumer may stop payment of a preauthorized electronic fund transfer by notifying the financial institution orally or in writing at any time up to three business days preceding the scheduled date of such transfer. The financial institution may require written confirmation to be provided to it within fourteen days of an oral notification if, when the oral notification is made, the consumer is advised of such requirement and the address to which such confirmation should be sent.

(b) In the case of preauthorized transfers from a consumer's account to the same person which may vary in amount, the financial institution or designated payee shall, prior to each transfer, provide reasonable advance notice to the consumer, in accordance with regulations of the Board, of the amount to be transferred and the scheduled date of the transfer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §907, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3733.)

**§ 1693f. Error resolution****(a) Notification to financial institution of error**

If a financial institution, within sixty days after having transmitted to a consumer docu-

mentation pursuant to section 1693d(a), (c), or (d) of this title or notification pursuant to section 1693d(b) of this title, receives oral or written notice in which the consumer—

- (1) sets forth or otherwise enables the financial institution to identify the name and account number of the consumer;
- (2) indicates the consumer's belief that the documentation, or, in the case of notification pursuant to section 1693d(b) of this title, the consumer's account, contains an error and the amount of such error; and
- (3) sets forth the reasons for the consumer's belief (where applicable) that an error has occurred,

the financial institution shall investigate the alleged error, determine whether an error has occurred, and report or mail the results of such investigation and determination to the consumer within ten business days. The financial institution may require written confirmation to be provided to it within ten business days of an oral notification of error if, when the oral notification is made, the consumer is advised of such requirement and the address to which such confirmation should be sent. A financial institution which requires written confirmation in accordance with the previous sentence need not provisionally recredit a consumer's account in accordance with subsection (c) of this section, nor shall the financial institution be liable under subsection (e) of this section if the written confirmation is not received within the ten-day period referred to in the previous sentence.

**(b) Correction of error; interest**

If the financial institution determines that an error did occur, it shall promptly, but in no event more than one business day after such determination, correct the error, subject to section 1693g of this title, including the crediting of interest where applicable.

**(c) Provisional recredit of consumer's account**

If a financial institution receives notice of an error in the manner and within the time period specified in subsection (a) of this section, it may, in lieu of the requirements of subsections (a) and (b) of this section, within ten business days after receiving such notice provisionally recredit the consumer's account for the amount alleged to be in error, subject to section 1693g of this title, including interest where applicable, pending the conclusion of its investigation and its determination of whether an error has occurred. Such investigation shall be concluded not later than forty-five days after receipt of notice of the error. During the pendency of the investigation, the consumer shall have full use of the funds provisionally recredited.

**(d) Absence of error; finding; explanation**

If the financial institution determines after its investigation pursuant to subsection (a) or (c) of this section that an error did not occur, it shall deliver or mail to the consumer an explanation of its findings within 3 business days after the conclusion of its investigation, and upon request of the consumer promptly deliver or mail to the consumer reproductions of all documents which the financial institution relied on to conclude that such error did not occur.

The financial institution shall include notice of the right to request reproductions with the explanation of its findings.

**(e) Treble damages**

If in any action under section 1693m of this title, the court finds that—

- (1) the financial institution did not provisionally recredit a consumer's account within the ten-day period specified in subsection (c) of this section, and the financial institution (A) did not make a good faith investigation of the alleged error, or (B) did not have a reasonable basis for believing that the consumer's account was not in error; or
- (2) the financial institution knowingly and willfully concluded that the consumer's account was not in error when such conclusion could not reasonably have been drawn from the evidence available to the financial institution at the time of its investigation,

then the consumer shall be entitled to treble damages determined under section 1693m(a)(1) of this title.

**(f) Acts constituting error**

For the purpose of this section, an error consists of—

- (1) an unauthorized electronic fund transfer;
- (2) an incorrect electronic fund transfer from or to the consumer's account;
- (3) the omission from a periodic statement of an electronic fund transfer affecting the consumer's account which should have been included;
- (4) a computational error by the financial institution;
- (5) the consumer's receipt of an incorrect amount of money from an electronic terminal;
- (6) a consumer's request for additional information or clarification concerning an electronic fund transfer or any documentation required by this subchapter; or
- (7) any other error described in regulations of the Board.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §908, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3733.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1693c, 1693m of this title.

**§ 1693g. Consumer liability**

**(a) Unauthorized electronic fund transfers; limit**

A consumer shall be liable for any unauthorized electronic fund transfer involving the account of such consumer only if the card or other means of access utilized for such transfer was an accepted card or other means<sup>1</sup> of access and if the issuer of such card, code, or other means of access has provided a means whereby the user of such card, code, or other means of access can be identified as the person authorized to use it, such as by signature, photograph, or fingerprint or by electronic or mechanical confirmation. In no event, however, shall a consumer's liability for an unauthorized transfer exceed the lesser of—

- (1) \$50; or

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "means".

(2) the amount of money or value of property or services obtained in such unauthorized electronic fund transfer prior to the time the financial institution is notified of, or otherwise becomes aware of, circumstances which lead to the reasonable belief that an unauthorized electronic fund transfer involving the consumer's account has been or may be effected. Notice under this paragraph is sufficient when such steps have been taken as may be reasonably required in the ordinary course of business to provide the financial institution with the pertinent information, whether or not any particular officer, employee, or agent of the financial institution does in fact receive such information.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, reimbursement need not be made to the consumer for losses the financial institution establishes would not have occurred but for the failure of the consumer to report within sixty days of transmittal of the statement (or in extenuating circumstances such as extended travel or hospitalization, within a reasonable time under the circumstances) any unauthorized electronic fund transfer or account error which appears on the periodic statement provided to the consumer under section 1693d of this title. In addition, reimbursement need not be made to the consumer for losses which the financial institution establishes would not have occurred but for the failure of the consumer to report any loss or theft of a card or other means of access within two business days after the consumer learns of the loss or theft (or in extenuating circumstances such as extended travel or hospitalization, within a longer period which is reasonable under the circumstances), but the consumer's liability under this subsection in any such case may not exceed a total of \$500, or the amount of unauthorized electronic fund transfers which occur following the close of two business days (or such longer period) after the consumer learns of the loss or theft but prior to notice to the financial institution under this subsection, whichever is less.

**(b) Burden of proof**

In any action which involves a consumer's liability for an unauthorized electronic fund transfer, the burden of proof is upon the financial institution to show that the electronic fund transfer was authorized or, if the electronic fund transfer was unauthorized, then the burden of proof is upon the financial institution to establish that the conditions of liability set forth in subsection (a) of this section have been met, and, if the transfer was initiated after the effective date of section 1693c of this title, that the disclosures required to be made to the consumer under section 1693c(a)(1) and (2) of this title were in fact made in accordance with such section.

**(c) Determination of limitation on liability**

In the event of a transaction which involves both an unauthorized electronic fund transfer and an extension of credit as defined in section 1602(e) of this title pursuant to an agreement between the consumer and the financial institution to extend such credit to the consumer in the event the consumer's account is overdrawn, the limitation on the consumer's liability for

such transaction shall be determined solely in accordance with this section.

**(d) Restriction on liability**

Nothing in this section imposes liability upon a consumer for an unauthorized electronic fund transfer in excess of his liability for such a transfer under other applicable law or under any agreement with the consumer's financial institution.

**(e) Scope of liability**

Except as provided in this section, a consumer incurs no liability from an unauthorized electronic fund transfer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §909, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3734.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1693f of this title.

**§ 1693h. Liability of financial institutions**

**(a) Action or failure to act proximately causing damages**

Subject to subsections (b) and (c) of this section, a financial institution shall be liable to a consumer for all damages proximately caused by—

(1) the financial institution's failure to make an electronic fund transfer, in accordance with the terms and conditions of an account, in the correct amount or in a timely manner when properly instructed to do so by the consumer, except where—

(A) the consumer's account has insufficient funds;

(B) the funds are subject to legal process or other encumbrance restricting such transfer;

(C) such transfer would exceed an established credit limit;

(D) an electronic terminal has insufficient cash to complete the transaction; or

(E) as otherwise provided in regulations of the Board;

(2) the financial institution's failure to make an electronic fund transfer due to insufficient funds when the financial<sup>1</sup> institution failed to credit, in accordance with the terms and conditions of an account, a deposit of funds to the consumer's account which would have provided sufficient funds to make the transfer, and

(3) the financial institution's failure to stop payment of a preauthorized transfer from a consumer's account when instructed to do so in accordance with the terms and conditions of the account.

**(b) Acts of God and technical malfunctions**

A financial institution shall not be liable under subsection (a)(1) or (2) of this section if the financial institution shows by a preponderance of the evidence that its action or failure to act resulted from—

(1) an act of God or other circumstance beyond its control, that it exercised reasonable

<sup>1</sup> So in original. Probably should be "financial".

care to prevent such an occurrence, and that it exercised such diligence as the circumstances required; or

(2) a technical malfunction which was known to the consumer at the time he attempted to initiate an electronic fund transfer or, in the case of a preauthorized transfer, at the time such transfer should have occurred.

**(c) Intent**

In the case of a failure described in subsection (a) of this section which was not intentional and which resulted from a bona fide error, notwithstanding the maintenance of procedures reasonably adapted to avoid any such error, the financial institution shall be liable for actual damages proved.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §910, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3735.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1693c, 1693m of this title.

**§ 1693i. Issuance of cards or other means of access**

**(a) Prohibition; proper issuance**

No person may issue to a consumer any card, code, or other means of access to such consumer's account for the purpose of initiating an electronic fund transfer other than—

(1) in response to a request or application therefor; or

(2) as a renewal of, or in substitution for, an accepted card, code, or other means of access, whether issued by the initial issuer or a successor.

**(b) Exceptions**

Notwithstanding the provisions of subsection (a) of this section, a person may distribute to a consumer on an unsolicited basis a card, code, or other means of access for use in initiating an electronic fund transfer from such consumer's account, if—

(1) such card, code, or other means of access is not validated;

(2) such distribution is accompanied by a complete disclosure, in accordance with section 1693c of this title, of the consumer's rights and liabilities which will apply if such card, code, or other means of access is validated;

(3) such distribution is accompanied by a clear explanation, in accordance with regulations of the Board, that such card, code, or other means of access is not validated and how the consumer may dispose of such code, card, or other means of access if validation is not desired; and

(4) such card, code, or other means of access is validated only in response to a request or application from the consumer, upon verification of the consumer's identity.

**(c) Validation**

For the purpose of subsection (b) of this section, a card, code, or other means of access is validated when it may be used to initiate an electronic fund transfer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §911, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3736.)

**§ 1693j. Suspension of obligations**

If a system malfunction prevents the effectuation of an electronic fund transfer initiated by a consumer to another person, and such other person has agreed to accept payment by such means, the consumer's obligation to the other person shall be suspended until the malfunction is corrected and the electronic fund transfer may be completed, unless such other person has subsequently, by written request, demanded payment by means other than an electronic fund transfer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §912, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3737.)

**§ 1693k. Compulsory use of electronic fund transfers**

No person may—

(1) condition the extension of credit to a consumer on such consumer's repayment by means of preauthorized electronic fund transfers; or

(2) require a consumer to establish an account for receipt of electronic fund transfers with a particular financial institution as a condition of employment or receipt of a government benefit.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §913, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3737.)

**§ 1693l. Waiver of rights**

No writing or other agreement between a consumer and any other person may contain any provision which constitutes a waiver of any right conferred or cause of action created by this subchapter. Nothing in this section prohibits, however, any writing or other agreement which grants to a consumer a more extensive right or remedy or greater protection than contained in this subchapter or a waiver given in settlement of a dispute or action.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §914, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3737.)

**§ 1693m. Civil liability**

**(a) Individual or class action for damages; amount of award**

Except as otherwise provided by this section and section 1693h of this title, any person who fails to comply with any provision of this subchapter with respect to any consumer, except for an error resolved in accordance with section 1693f of this title, is liable to such consumer in an amount equal to the sum of—

(1) any actual damage sustained by such consumer as a result of such failure;

(2)(A) in the case of an individual action, an amount not less than \$100 nor greater than \$1,000; or

(B) in the case of a class action, such amount as the court may allow, except that (i)

as to each member of the class no minimum recovery shall be applicable, and (ii) the total recovery under this subparagraph in any class action or series of class actions arising out of the same failure to comply by the same person shall not be more than the lesser of \$500,000 or 1 per centum of the net worth of the defendant; and

(3) in the case of any successful action to enforce the foregoing liability, the costs of the action, together with a reasonable attorney's fee as determined by the court.

**(b) Factors determining amount of award**

In determining the amount of liability in any action under subsection (a) of this section, the court shall consider, among other relevant factors—

(1) in any individual action under subsection (a)(2)(A) of this section, the frequency and persistence of noncompliance, the nature of such noncompliance, and the extent to which the noncompliance was intentional; or

(2) in any class action under subsection (a)(2)(B) of this section, the frequency and persistence of noncompliance, the nature of such noncompliance, the resources of the defendant, the number of persons adversely affected, and the extent to which the noncompliance was intentional.

**(c) Unintentional violations; bona fide error**

Except as provided in section 1693h of this title, a person may not be held liable in any action brought under this section for a violation of this subchapter if the person shows by a preponderance of evidence that the violation was not intentional and resulted from a bona fide error notwithstanding the maintenance of procedures reasonably adapted to avoid any such error.

**(d) Good faith compliance with rule, regulation, or interpretation of Board or approval of duly authorized official or employee of Federal Reserve System**

No provision of this section or section 1693n of this title imposing any liability shall apply to—

(1) any act done or omitted in good faith in conformity with any rule, regulation, or interpretation thereof by the Board or in conformity with any interpretation or approval by an official or employee of the Federal Reserve System duly authorized by the Board to issue such interpretations or approvals under such procedures as the Board may prescribe therefor; or

(2) any failure to make disclosure in proper form if a financial institution utilized an appropriate model clause issued by the Board,

notwithstanding that after such act, omission, or failure has occurred, such rule, regulation, approval, or model clause is amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason.

**(e) Notification to consumer prior to action; adjustment of consumer's account**

A person has no liability under this section for any failure to comply with any requirement under this subchapter if, prior to the institution of an action under this section, the person notifies the consumer concerned of the failure, com-

plies with the requirements of this subchapter, and makes an appropriate adjustment to the consumer's account and pays actual damages or, where applicable, damages in accordance with section 1693h of this title.

**(f) Action in bad faith or for harassment; attorney's fees**

On a finding by the court that an unsuccessful action under this section was brought in bad faith or for purposes of harassment, the court shall award to the defendant attorney's fees reasonable in relation to the work expended and costs.

**(g) Jurisdiction of courts; time for maintenance of action**

Without regard to the amount in controversy, any action under this section may be brought in any United States district court, or in any other court of competent jurisdiction, within one year from the date of the occurrence of the violation.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §915, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3737.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1693f of this title.

**§ 1693n. Criminal liability**

**(a) Violations respecting giving of false or inaccurate information, failure to provide information, and failure to comply with provisions of this subchapter**

Whoever knowingly and willfully—

(1) gives false or inaccurate information or fails to provide information which he is required to disclose by this subchapter or any regulation issued thereunder; or

(2) otherwise fails to comply with any provision of this subchapter;

shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

**(b) Violations affecting interstate or foreign commerce**

Whoever—

(1) knowingly, in a transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce, uses or attempts or conspires to use any counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument to obtain money, goods, services, or anything else of value which within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more; or

(2) with unlawful or fraudulent intent, transports or attempts or conspires to transport in interstate or foreign commerce a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained; or

(3) with unlawful or fraudulent intent, uses any instrumentality of interstate or foreign commerce to sell or transport a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained; or

(4) knowingly receives, conceals, uses, or transports money, goods, services, or anything else of value (except tickets for interstate or foreign transportation) which (A) within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more, (B) has moved in or is part of, or which constitutes interstate or foreign commerce, and (C) has been obtained with a counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument; or

(5) knowingly receives, conceals, uses, sells, or transports in interstate or foreign commerce one or more tickets for interstate or foreign transportation, which (A) within any one-year period have a value aggregating \$500 or more, and (B) have been purchased or obtained with one or more counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument; or

(6) in a transaction affecting interstate or foreign commerce, furnishes money, property, services, or anything else of value, which within any one-year period has a value aggregating \$1,000 or more, through the use of any counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained debit instrument knowing the same to be counterfeit, fictitious, altered, forged, lost, stolen, or fraudulently obtained—

shall be fined not more than \$10,000 or imprisoned not more than ten years, or both.

**(c) “Debit instrument” defined**

As used in this section, the term “debit instrument” means a card, code, or other device, other than a check, draft, or similar paper instrument, by the use of which a person may initiate an electronic fund transfer.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §916, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3738.)

SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in section 1693m of this title; title 18 section 513.

**§ 1693o. Administrative enforcement**

**(a) Enforcing agencies**

Compliance with the requirements imposed under this subchapter shall be enforced under—

(1) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], in the case of—

(A) national banks, and Federal branches and Federal agencies of foreign banks, by the Office of the Comptroller of the Currency;

(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), branches and agencies of foreign banks (other than Federal branches, Federal agencies, and insured State branches of foreign banks), commercial lending companies owned or controlled by foreign banks, and organizations operating under section 25 or 25(a)<sup>1</sup> of the Federal Reserve Act [12 U.S.C. 601 et seq., 611 et seq.], by the Board; and

(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members

of the Federal Reserve System) and insured State branches of foreign banks, by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(2) section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act [12 U.S.C. 1818], by the Director of the Office of Thrift Supervision, in the case of a savings association the deposits of which are insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;

(3) the Federal Credit Union Act [12 U.S.C. 1751 et seq.], by the Administrator of the National Credit Union Administration with respect to any Federal credit union.<sup>2</sup>

(4) part A of subtitle VII of title 49, by the Civil Aeronautics Board,<sup>3</sup> with respect to any air carrier or foreign air carrier subject to that part; and

(5) the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 [15 U.S.C. 78a et seq.], by the Securities and Exchange Commission, with respect to any broker or dealer subject to that Act.

The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).

**(b) Violations of subchapter deemed violations of pre-existing statutory requirements; additional powers**

For the purpose of the exercise by any agency referred to in subsection (a) of this section of its powers under any Act referred to in that subsection, a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed to be a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. In addition to its powers under any provision of law specifically referred to in subsection (a) of this section, each of the agencies referred to in that subsection may exercise, for the purpose of enforcing compliance with any requirement imposed under this subchapter, any other authority conferred on it by law.

**(c) Overall enforcement authority of Federal Trade Commission**

Except to the extent that enforcement of the requirements imposed under this subchapter is specifically committed to some other Government agency under subsection (a) of this section, the Federal Trade Commission shall enforce such requirements. For the purpose of the exercise by the Federal Trade Commission of its functions and powers under the Federal Trade Commission Act [15 U.S.C. 41 et seq.], a violation of any requirement imposed under this subchapter shall be deemed a violation of a requirement imposed under that Act. All of the functions and powers of the Federal Trade Commission under the Federal Trade Commission Act are available to the Commission to enforce compliance by any person subject to the jurisdiction of the Commission with the requirements imposed under this subchapter, irrespective of whether that person is engaged in commerce or

<sup>2</sup>So in original. The period probably should be a semicolon.

<sup>3</sup>So in original. Probably should be “Secretary of Transportation”.

<sup>1</sup> See References in Text note below.

meets any other jurisdictional tests in the Federal Trade Commission Act.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §917, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3739; amended Pub. L. 101-73, title VII, §744(o), Aug. 9, 1989, 103 Stat. 440; Pub. L. 102-242, title II, §212(f), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2301.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

Section 25(a) of the Federal Reserve Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(1)(B), which is classified to subchapter II (§611 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12, Banks and Banking, was renumbered section 25A of that act by Pub. L. 102-242, title I, §142(e)(2), Dec. 19, 1991, 105 Stat. 2281. Section 25 of the Federal Reserve Act is classified to subchapter I (§601 et seq.) of chapter 6 of Title 12.

The Federal Credit Union Act, referred to in subsec. (a)(3), is act June 26, 1934, ch. 750, 48 Stat. 1216, as amended, which is classified generally to chapter 14 (§1751 et seq.) of Title 12. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 1751 of Title 12 and Tables.

The Securities Exchange Act of 1934, referred to in subsec. (a)(5), is act June 6, 1934, ch. 404, 48 Stat. 881, as amended, which is classified principally to chapter 2B (§78a et seq.) of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 78a of this title and Tables.

The Federal Trade Commission Act, referred to in subsec. (c), is act Sept. 26, 1914, ch. 311, 38 Stat. 717, as amended, which is classified generally to subchapter I (§41 et seq.) of chapter 2 of this title. For complete classification of this Act to the Code, see section 58 of this title and Tables.

## CODIFICATION

In subsec. (a)(4), “part A of subtitle VII of title 49” substituted for “the Federal Aviation Act of 1958 [49 App. U.S.C. 1301 et seq.]” and “that part” substituted for “that Act” on authority of Pub. L. 103-272, §6(b), July 5, 1994, 108 Stat. 1378, the first section of which enacted subtitles II, III, and V to X of Title 49, Transportation.

## AMENDMENTS

1991—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 102-242, §212(f)(2), inserted at end “The terms used in paragraph (1) that are not defined in this subchapter or otherwise defined in section 3(s) of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act (12 U.S.C. 1813(s)) shall have the meaning given to them in section 1(b) of the International Banking Act of 1978 (12 U.S.C. 3101).”

Pub. L. 102-242, §212(f)(1), added par. (1) and struck out former par. (1) which read as follows: “section 8 of the Federal Deposit Insurance Act, in the case of—

“(A) national banks, by the Comptroller of the Currency;

“(B) member banks of the Federal Reserve System (other than national banks), by the Board;

“(C) banks insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (other than members of the Federal Reserve System), by the Board of Directors of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation;”

1989—Subsec. (a)(2). Pub. L. 101-73 amended par. (2) generally. Prior to amendment, par. (2) read as follows: “section 5(d) of the Home Owners’ Loan Act of 1933, section 407 of the National Housing Act, and sections 6(i) and 17 of the Federal Home Loan Bank Act, by the Federal Home Loan Bank Board (acting directly or through the Federal Savings and Loan Insurance Corporation), in the case of any institution subject to any of those provisions;”

## TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS

Functions vested in Administrator of National Credit Union Administration transferred and vested in National Credit Union Administration Board pursuant to section 1752a of Title 12, Banks and Banking.

Functions, powers, and duties of Civil Aeronautics Board terminated or transferred by section 1551 of former Title 49, Transportation, effective in part on Dec. 31, 1981, in part on Jan. 1, 1983, and in part on Jan. 1, 1985.

## SECTION REFERRED TO IN OTHER SECTIONS

This section is referred to in sections 1693b, 1693p of this title.

## § 1693p. Reports to Congress

(a) Not later than twelve months after the effective date of this subchapter and at one-year intervals thereafter, the Board shall make reports to the Congress concerning the administration of its functions under this subchapter, including such recommendations as the Board deems necessary and appropriate. In addition, each report of the Board shall include its assessment of the extent to which compliance with this subchapter is being achieved, and a summary of the enforcement actions taken under section 1693o of this title. In such report, the Board shall particularly address the effects of this subchapter on the costs and benefits to financial institutions and consumers, on competition, on the introduction of new technology, on the operations of financial institutions, and on the adequacy of consumer protection.

(b) In the exercise of its functions under this subchapter, the Board may obtain upon request the views of any other Federal agency which, in the judgment of the Board, exercises regulatory or supervisory functions with respect to any class of persons subject to this subchapter.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §918, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3740; amended Pub. L. 97-375, title II, §209(a), Dec. 21, 1982, 96 Stat. 1825.)

## REFERENCES IN TEXT

For effective date of this subchapter, referred to in subsec. (a), see section 921 of Pub. L. 90-321, set out as an Effective Date note under section 1693 of this title.

## AMENDMENTS

1982—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 97-375 struck out requirement that the Attorney General make a report on the same terms as the Board, and that such report also contain an analysis of the impact of this subchapter on the operation, workload, and efficiency of the Federal courts, and substituted “necessary and appropriate” for “necessary or appropriate”.

## § 1693q. Relation to State laws

This subchapter does not annul, alter, or affect the laws of any State relating to electronic fund transfers, except to the extent that those laws are inconsistent with the provisions of this subchapter, and then only to the extent of the inconsistency. A State law is not inconsistent with this subchapter if the protection such law affords any consumer is greater than the protection afforded by this subchapter. The Board shall, upon its own motion or upon the request of any financial institution, State, or other interested party, submitted in accordance with procedures prescribed in regulations of the Board, determine whether a State requirement is inconsistent or affords greater protection. If the Board determines that a State requirement is inconsistent, financial institutions shall incur

no liability under the law of that State for a good faith failure to comply with that law, notwithstanding that such determination is subsequently amended, rescinded, or determined by judicial or other authority to be invalid for any reason. This subchapter does not extend the applicability of any such law to any class of persons or transactions to which it would not otherwise apply.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §919, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3741.)

**§ 1693r. Exemption for State regulation**

The Board shall by regulation exempt from the requirements of this subchapter any class of electronic fund transfers within any State if the Board determines that under the law of that State that class of electronic fund transfers is subject to requirements substantially similar to those imposed by this subchapter, and that there is adequate provision for enforcement.

(Pub. L. 90-321, title IX, §920, as added Pub. L. 95-630, title XX, §2001, Nov. 10, 1978, 92 Stat. 3741.)

**CHAPTER 42—INTERSTATE LAND SALES**

- Sec.
- 1701. Definitions.
- 1702. Exemptions.
  - (a) Sale or lease of lots generally.
  - (b) Sale or lease of lots subject to other statutory registration and disclosure requirements.
  - (c) Rules and regulations.
- 1703. Requirements respecting sale or lease of lots.
  - (a) Prohibited activities.
  - (b) Revocation of nonexempt contract or agreement at option of purchaser or lessee; time limit.
  - (c) Revocation of contract or agreement at option of purchaser or lessee where required property report not supplied.
  - (d) Additional authority for revocation of nonexempt contract or agreement at option of purchaser or lessee; time limit; applicability.
  - (e) Repayment of purchaser or lessee upon revocation of all money paid under contract or agreement to seller or lessor.
- 1704. Registration of subdivisions.
  - (a) Filing of statement of record.
  - (b) Payment of fees; use by Secretary.
  - (c) Filing deemed to have taken place upon receipt of statement of record accompanied by fee.
  - (d) Availability of information to public.
- 1705. Information required in statement of record.
- 1706. Effective date of statements of record and amendments thereto.
  - (a) Thirtieth day after filing or such earlier date as determined by Secretary; consolidation of subsequent statement with earlier recording.
  - (b) Incomplete or inaccurate statements of record.
  - (c) Amendment of statement of record.
  - (d) Suspension of statement of record containing untrue statement or omission to state material fact; notice and hearing; termination of order of suspension.

- Sec.
- (e) Examination to determine issuance of order; access to records; order suspending statement of record upon failure to cooperate.
- (f) Service of notices.
- 1707. Property report.
  - (a) Contents of report.
  - (b) Promotional use.
- 1708. Certification of substantially equivalent State law.
  - (a) Criteria; request by State.
  - (b) Filing of State disclosure materials and related documentation for purposes of Federal statement of record and property report requirements; acceptance by Secretary.
  - (c) Notice to State upon failure to meet requirements and remedial action necessary for certification.
  - (d) Periodic review of certified States' laws, regulations, and administration; withdrawal of certification.
  - (e) State and local governmental authorities affected; cooperation with State authorities.
- 1709. Civil liabilities.
  - (a) Violations; relief recoverable.
  - (b) Enforcement of rights by purchaser or lessee.
  - (c) Amounts recoverable.
  - (d) Contributions.
- 1710. Court review of orders.
  - (a) Petition; jurisdiction; findings of Secretary; additional evidence; finality.
  - (b) Stay of Secretary's order.
- 1711. Limitation of actions.
  - (a) Section 1703(a) violations.
  - (b) Section 1703(b) to (e) violations.
- 1712. Contrary stipulations void.
- 1713. Additional remedies.
- 1714. Investigations, injunctions, and prosecution of offenses.
  - (a) Permanent or temporary injunction or restraining order; jurisdiction.
  - (b) Investigations; publication of information concerning violations.
  - (c) Oaths and affirmations; subpoena power.
  - (d) Contempt; court order requiring attendance and testimony of witnesses; jurisdiction.
- 1715. Administration.
  - (a) Delegation of functions, duties, and powers; scope of delegations; appointment, etc., of delegates; right of appeal.
  - (b) Hearings.
  - (c) Procedures applicable.
- 1716. Unlawful representations.
- 1717. Penalties for violations.
- 1717a. Civil money penalties.
  - (a) In general.
  - (b) Agency procedures.
  - (c) Judicial review of agency determination.
  - (d) Action to collect penalty.
  - (e) Settlement by Secretary.
  - (f) "Knowingly" defined.
  - (g) Regulations.
  - (h) Use of penalties for administration.
- 1718. Rules, regulations, and orders.
- 1719. Jurisdiction of offenses and suits.
- 1719a. Repealed.
- 1720. Authorization of appropriations.

**§ 1701. Definitions**

For the purposes of this chapter, the term—